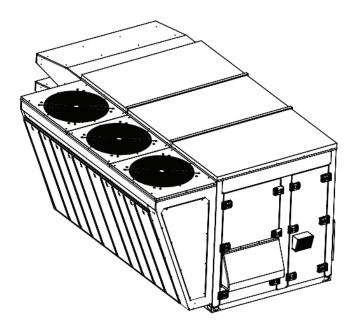


# Installation, Operation, and Maintenance

# Horizon™ Outdoor Air Unit

# Horizon R-454B Refrigerant with v12 Controls



Models: OABD, OABE, OABF, OADG, OAND, OANE, OANF, OANG

Important: Proper completion of the tasks outlined in this Installation, Operation, and Maintenance manual require and assume the technician has been certified as a start-up technician for the Horizon Outdoor Air unit. This includes working knowledge

of the Tracer TU program.

# **A**SAFETY WARNING

Only qualified personnel should install and service the equipment. The installation, starting up, and servicing of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning equipment can be hazardous and requires specific knowledge and training. Improperly installed, adjusted or altered equipment by an unqualified person could result in death or serious injury. When working on the equipment, observe all precautions in the literature and on the tags, stickers, and labels that are attached to the equipment.

# AAVERTISSEMENT DE SÉCURITÉ

L'installation et l'entretien de cet équipement doivent être assurés exclusivement par du personnel qualifié.
L'installation, la mise en service et l'entretien d'équipements de chauffage, de ventilation et de climatisation (CVC)
présentent un danger et requièrent des connaissances et une formation spécifiques. Une installation, un réglage ou une
modification inappropriés d'un équipement par une personne non qualifiée peut provoquer des blessures graves, voire
la mort. Lors de toute intervention sur l'équipement, respectez les consignes de sécurité figurant dans la
documentation, ainsi que sur les pictogrammes, autocollants et étiquettes apposés sur l'équipement.





# Introduction

Read this manual thoroughly before operating or servicing this unit.

# Warnings, Cautions, and Notices

Safety advisories appear throughout this manual as required. Your personal safety and the proper operation of this machine depend upon the strict observance of these precautions.

The three types of advisories are defined as follows:

# **WARNING**

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death or serious injury.

#### CAUTION

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury. It could also be used to alert against unsafe practices.

#### NOTICE

Indicates a situation that could result in equipment or property-damage only accidents.

## Important Environmental Concerns

Scientific research has shown that certain man-made chemicals can affect the earth's naturally occurring stratospheric ozone layer when released to the atmosphere. In particular, several of the identified chemicals that may affect the ozone layer are refrigerants that contain Chlorine, Fluorine and Carbon (CFCs) and those containing Hydrogen, Chlorine, Fluorine and Carbon (HCFCs). Not all refrigerants containing these compounds have the same potential impact to the environment. Trane advocates the responsible handling of all refrigerants.

# Important Responsible Refrigerant Practices

Trane believes that responsible refrigerant practices are important to the environment, our customers, and the air conditioning industry. All technicians who handle refrigerants must be certified according to local rules. For the USA, the Federal Clean Air Act (Section 608) sets forth the requirements for handling, reclaiming, recovering and recycling of certain refrigerants and the equipment that is used in these service procedures. In addition, some states or municipalities may have additional requirements that must also be adhered to for responsible management of refrigerants. Know the applicable laws and follow them.

#### **AWARNING**

# Proper Field Wiring and Grounding Required!

Failure to follow code could result in death or serious injury. All field wiring MUST be performed by qualified personnel. Improperly installed and grounded field wiring poses FIRE and ELECTROCUTION hazards. To avoid these hazards, you MUST follow requirements for field wiring installation and grounding as described in NEC and your local/state/national electrical codes.

# **A**ATTENTION

# Câblage et Mise à la Terre Appropriés Champs Obligatoires!

Le non-respect du code pourrait entraîner la mort ou grave blessure. Tout le câblage sur le terrain DOIT être effectué par des personnes qualifiées personnel. Terrain mal installé et mis à la terre le câblage pose des risques de FIRE et d'ÉLECTROCUTION. À evitez ces risques, vous devez suivre les exigences pour l'installation et la mise à la terre du câblage de terrain comme décrit dans NEC et vos codes électriques locaux/étatiques/nationaux.

©2025 Trane OAU-SVX008B-EN



## **AWARNING**

# Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) Required!

Failure to wear proper PPE for the job being undertaken could result in death or serious injury. Technicians, in order to protect themselves from potential electrical, mechanical, and chemical hazards, MUST follow precautions in this manual and on the tags, stickers, and labels, as well as the instructions below:

- Before installing/servicing this unit, technicians MUST put on all PPE required for the work being undertaken (Examples; cut resistant gloves/sleeves, butyl gloves, safety glasses, hard hat/bump cap, fall protection, electrical PPE and arc flash clothing). ALWAYS refer to appropriate Safety Data Sheets (SDS) and OSHA guidelines for proper PPE.
- When working with or around hazardous chemicals, ALWAYS refer to the appropriate SDS and OSHA/GHS (Global Harmonized System of Classification and Labeling of Chemicals) guidelines for information on allowable personal exposure levels, proper respiratory protection and handling instructions.
- If there is a risk of energized electrical contact, arc, or flash, technicians MUST put on all PPE in accordance with OSHA, NFPA 70E, or other country-specific requirements for arc flash protection, PRIOR to servicing the unit. NEVER PERFORM ANY SWITCHING, DISCONNECTING, OR VOLTAGE TESTING WITHOUT PROPER ELECTRICAL PPE AND ARC FLASH CLOTHING. ENSURE ELECTRICAL METERS AND EQUIPMENT ARE PROPERLY RATED FOR INTENDED VOLTAGE.

# **AAVERTISSEMENT**

# Équipements de protection individuelle (EPI) obligatoires!

En cas d'équipement de protection individuelle inadapté au travail entrepris, les techniciens s'exposent à des risques de blessures graves voire mortelles. Afin de se prémunir d'éventuels risques électriques, mécaniques et chimiques, les techniciens DOIVENT respecter les consignes préconisées dans le présent manuel, sur les étiquettes et les autocollants, ainsi que les instructions suivantes:

- Avant d'installer/réparer cette unité, les techniciens doivent IMPÉRATIVEMENT porter tout l'équipement de protection individuelle (EPI) recommandé pour le travail entrepris (exemples: gants/manchons résistants aux coupures, gants en caoutchouc butyl, lunettes de protection, casque de chantier/antichoc, protection contre les chutes, EPI pour travaux électriques et vêtements de protection contre les arcs électriques). Consulter SYSTÉMATIQUEMENT les fiches de données de sécurité et les directives de l'OSHA pour connaître la liste des EPI adaptés.
- Lors d'une intervention avec ou à proximité de produits chimiques dangereux, consulter SYSTÉMATIQUEMENT les fiches de données de sécurité appropriées et les directives de l'OSHA/du SGH (système général harmonisé de classification et d'étiquetage des produits chimiques) afin d'obtenir des renseignements sur les niveaux admissibles d'exposition personnelle, la protection respiratoire adaptée et les recommandations de manipulation.
- En cas de risque d'éclair, d'arc électrique ou de contact électrique avec un équipement électrique sous tension, et AVANT de réparer l'unité, les techniciens doivent IMPÉRATIVEMENT porter tout l'équipement de protection individuelle (EPI) conformément à l'OSHA, à la norme NFPA 70E ou à toute autre exigence propre au pays pour la protection contre les arcs électriques. NE JAMAIS COMMUTER. DÉBRANCHER ou EFFECTUER DE TEST DE TENSION SANS PORTER UN EPI POUR TRAVAUX ÉLECTRIQUES OU UN VÊTEMENT DE PROTECTION APPROPRIÉ CONTRE LES ARCS ÉLECTRIQUES. IL CONVIENT DE S'ASSURER QUE LES COMPTEURS ET ÉQUIPEMENTS ÉLECTRIQUES CORRESPONDENT À LA TENSION NOMINALE PRÉVUE.



## **AWARNING**

## Refrigerant under High Pressure!

Failure to follow instructions below could result in an explosion which could result in death or serious injury or equipment damage. System contains oil and refrigerant under high pressure. Recover refrigerant to relieve pressure before opening the system. See unit nameplate for refrigerant type. Do not use non-approved refrigerants, refrigerant substitutes, or refrigerant additives.

## AVERTISSEMENT

## Fluide frigorigène sous haute pression!

Tout manquement aux instructions indiquées cidessous peut provoquer une explosion pouvant causer des blessures graves voire mortelles ou des dommages matériels. Le système contient de l'huile et du fluide frigorigène sous haute pression. Avant d'ouvrir le circuit, récupérez le fluide frigorigène pour éliminer toute pression dans le circuit. Consultez la plaque constructeur de l'unité pour connaître le type de fluide frigorigène employé. Utilisez uniquement des fluides frigorigènes, substituts et additifs agréés.

# **WARNING**

# Hazard of Explosion and Deadly Gases!

Failure to follow all proper safe refrigerant handling practices could result in death or serious injury. Never solder, braze or weld on refrigerant lines or any unit components that are above atmospheric pressure or where refrigerant may be present. Always remove refrigerant by following the guidelines established by the EPA Federal Clean Air Act or other state or local codes as appropriate. After refrigerant removal, use dry nitrogen to bring system back to atmospheric pressure before opening system for repairs. Mixtures of refrigerants and air under pressure may become combustible in the presence of an ignition source leading to an explosion. Excessive heat from soldering, brazing or welding with refrigerant vapors present can form highly toxic gases and extremely corrosive acids.

# **AAVERTISSEMENT**

# Risque d'explosion et gaz mortels!

Le non-respect de toutes les consignes de manipulation des fluides frigorigènes peut entraîner la mort ou des blessures graves.

N'effectuez en aucune circonstance des opérations de brasage ou de soudage sur des conduites de fluide frigorigène ou des composants de l'unité sous pression ou pouvant contenir du fluide frigorigène. Récupérez systématiquement le fluide frigorigène en respectant les directives de la loi américaine sur la propreté de l'air (Agence fédérale pour l'environnement) ou toute autre réglementation nationale ou locale en vigueur. Après la récupération du fluide frigorigène, utilisez de l'azote déshydraté pour ramener le système à la pression atmosphérique avant de l'ouvrir pour procéder aux réparations. Les mélanges de fluide frigorigène et d'air sous pression peuvent devenir combustibles en présence d'une source d'inflammation et provoquer une explosion. La chaleur excessive découlant de travaux de soudage ou de brasage associée à la présence de vapeurs de fluide frigorigène peut entraîner la formation de gaz hautement toxiques et d'acides extrêmement corrosifs.

## **AWARNING**

#### **Follow EHS Policies!**

Failure to follow instructions below could result in death or serious injury.

- All Trane personnel must follow the company's Environmental, Health and Safety (EHS) policies when performing work such as hot work, electrical, fall protection, lockout/tagout, refrigerant handling, etc. Where local regulations are more stringent than these policies, those regulations supersede these policies.
- Non-Trane personnel should always follow local regulations.



## **A**AVERTISSEMENT

## Respecter les politiques EHS!

Lenon-respect des consignes suivantes peut être à l'origine de blessures graves,voire mortelles.

- Tous les membres du personnel du groupe Trane sont tenus de respecter les règles établies par Trane en matière d'environnement, d'hygiène et de sécurité (EHS) lors d'une intervention, notamment en cas de travaux à chaud, de risque d'électrocution et de chute, deprocédures de verrouillage/mise hors service, de manipulation de fluide frigorigène, etc. Si les réglementations locales sont plus strictes que les règles imposées par le groupe, elles deviennent prioritaires.
- Le personnel extérieur au groupe Trane est, quant à lui, systématiquement tenu d'observer les réglementations en vigueur à l'échelle locale.

# **AWARNING**

# **Hazard of Explosion and Deadly Gases!**

Failure to follow instructions could result in death or serious injury.

If you smell gas:

- 1. Open windows.
- 2. Don't touch electrical switches.
- 3. Extinguish any open flame.
- 4. Immediately call your gas supplier.

#### AAVERTISSEMENT

#### Risque d'explosion et gaz mortels!

Le non-respect de toutes les consignes de sécurité cidessous peut entraîner la mort ou des blessures graves.

Si vous sentez une odeur de gaz:

- 1. Ouvrez les fenêtres.
- 2. Ne touches à aucun interrupteur.
- 3. Éteignez toute flamme nue.
- 4. Avertissez immédiatement votre fournisseur de gaz.

## **AWARNING**

#### **Hazardous Service Procedures!**

Improper installation, adjustment, alteration, service or maintenance can cause property damage, injury or death. Read the installation, operating and maintenance instructions thoroughly before installing or servicing this equipment.

# **AAVERTISSEMENT**

## Procédures d'entretien dangereuses!

Une installation, un réglage, une modification, une réparation ou un entretien incorrect peut entraîner des dommages matériels, des blessures ou la mort. Lisez attentivement les instructions d'installation, de fonctionnement et d'entretien avant de procéder à l'installation ou à l'entretien de cet équipement.

#### **AWARNING**

# **Hazard of Explosion and Deadly Gases**

Failure to follow instructions could result in death or serious injury.

The use and storage of gasoline or other flammable vapors and liquids in open containers in the vicinity of this appliance is hazardous.

#### **AAVERTISSEMENT**

# Risque d'explosion et gaz mortels!

Le non-respect de toutes les consignes de sécurité cidessous peut entraîner la mort ou des blessures graves.

Il est dangereux d'utiliser ou d'entreposer de l'essence ou autres liquides ou vapeurs inflammables dans des récipients ouverts à proximité de cet appareil.

#### **AWARNING**

#### R-454B Flammable A2L Refrigerant!

Failure to use proper equipment or components as described below could result in equipment failure, and possibly fire, which could result in death, serious injury, or equipment damage.

The equipment described in this manual uses R-454B refrigerant which is flammable (A2L). Use ONLY R-454B rated service equipment and components. For specific handling concerns with R-454B, contact your local representative.

## **AWARNING**

#### **Electrical Shock Hazard!**

Failure to follow instructions below could result in death or serious injury.

Properly connect the system's oversized protective earthing (grounding) terminal(s).



#### Introduction

# Copyright

This document and the information in it are the property of Trane, and may not be used or reproduced in whole or in part without written permission. Trane reserves the right to revise this publication at any time, and to make changes to its content without obligation to notify any person of such revision or change.

## **Trademarks**

All trademarks referenced in this document are the trademarks of their respective owners.

# **Revision History**

- Added Testing section and updated Emergency Stop Circuit section in General Information chapter.
- Updated notes in Unit Clearances, Curb Dimensions, and Dimensional Data chapter.
- Updated Unit Weights tables and added Corner Weights section to Unit Weight and Rigging chapter.
- Added Installation Water Coil Requirements and UV Light Information sections to Installation chapter.
- Updated information in Start-Up and Maintenance chapters.
- · Added Replacement Parts section to Appendix chapter.
- Updated complete information in Start-Up Form Trane® Horizon™ DOAS chapter.

# **Product Safety Information**

This appliance is not intended for use by persons (including children) with reduced physical, sensory or mental capabilities, or lack of experience and knowledge, unless they have been given supervision or instruction concerning use of the appliance by a person responsible for their safety. Children should be supervised to ensure that they do not play with the appliance.

Maximum altitude of use is 10,000 feet.

This appliance incorporates an earth connection for functional purposes only.



| Model Number Descriptions                          | 2-Position Outdoor and                  |
|--|---|
| Horizon Outdoor Air Unit                           | Return Air Dampers                      |
| Model: OAN Rev5                                    | Mixed Air Setup on 2-Position Dampers22 |
| Horizon Outdoor Air Unit                           | 2-Position Return Air Damper            |
| Model: OADG Rev6 and OANG Rev6 14                  | No Damper (100 Percent Return Air)      |
| Horizon Outdoor Air Unit 17                        | Exhaust Dampers23                       |
| Model: OAB Rev5                                    | Barometric Relief Exhaust Dampers23     |
| General Information 20                             | Split Return/Exhaust23                  |
| Overview of Manual 20                              | Primary Heaters                         |
| Model Number Description                           | Indirect-Fired Gas Heat23               |
| Unit Nameplate                                     | Modulating 1-Stage Gas Heat23           |
| Wiring Diagrams 20                                 | Modulating 2-Stage Gas Heat23           |
| Compressor Nameplate                               | Modulating 3-Stage Gas Heat24           |
| Unit Description 20                                | Fans24                                  |
| Testing  | Condenser Fans24                        |
| Indoor Fan Failure Input                           | Filter Status Switches25                |
| Low Pressure Control ReliaTel Control 20           | Condensate Overflow Switch25            |
| High Pressure Control ReliaTel Control 21          | Airflow Monitoring25                    |
| Space Temperature/Humidity Sensor 21               | Supply Airflow Monitoring25             |
| High Temperature Sensor 21                         | Exhaust Airflow Monitoring25            |
| Outdoor Air Temperature and                        | Outdoor Airflow Monitoring25            |
| Relative Humidity Sensor                           | Power Phase Monitor25                   |
| Control Input (Occupied/Unoccupied) 21             | Main Unit Display (Optional)            |
| Demand Control CO2 Ventilation 21                  | Emergency Stop Circuit26                |
| Hot Gas Reheat                                     | Unit Inspection                         |
| 100 Percent Outdoor Air Hood                       | First Aid Measures                      |
| with Damper and Filters                            | Storage27                               |
| Modulating Indirect Fired Gas Burner 21            | Unit Clearances28                       |
| Through-the-Base Electrical with Disconnect Switch | A2L Information29                       |
| Through-the-Side Gas Piping 21                     | A2L Work Procedures29                   |
| Hinged Access Doors                                | Servicing29                             |
| Modulating Electric Heat                           | Ignition Source Mitigation              |
| Supply and Exhaust Piezo Fan Rings 22              | Leak Detection                          |
| ERV  | Refrigerant Removal and Evacuation30    |
| Hot Water Coils                                    | Refrigerant Charging31                  |
| Suction Pressure Monitoring                        | Decommissioning                         |
| Outdoor and Return Air Dampers                     | General                                 |
| 2-Position Outdoor Air Damper                      | A2L Application Considerations31        |
| 2 i ostaon odtaooi Ali Dampei 22                   | Ignition Sources in Ductwork32          |



# **Table of Contents**

| Ignition Sources in Unit                               | Rigging  |
|--|--|
| Minimum Room Area Limits                               | Installation   |
| (Refrigerant charge greater than 3.91 lb per circuit)  | Ductwork70   |
| Indoor WSHP Installation                               | Units with Electric Heat70                                   |
|  | Units with Indirect Fired Gas Heat71                         |
| Minimum Room Area (A <sub>min</sub> ) Adjustments . 35 | General Unit Requirements72                                  |
| Determining Room Area (A or TA)                        | Condensate Drain Configuration72                             |
| Refrigeration Detection System (RDS)                   | Main Electrical Power Requirements                           |
| Unit Clearances, Curb Dimensions, and                  | Water Coil Requirements73                                    |
| Dimensional Data                                       | Hot Water Control Valve Wiring73                             |
| OAND Units   | Chilled Water Connection Size                                |
| Unit Clearances  | and Location73   |
| Curb Dimensions  | Filter Installation  |
| Dimensional Data 40                                    | Opening the Collapsed Exhaust                                |
| OAB Units  | Damper Hood  |
| Unit Clearances  | Field Installed Power Wiring                                 |
| Curb Dimensions 42                                     | Utility Connections  |
| Dimensional Data 43                                    | Horizon Water Source Heat Pump Field Connection Instructions |
| OADG Units   | IF Heater Air Inlet Hood and Flue                            |
| Unit Clearances 44                                     | Assembly Instructions for                                    |
| Curb Dimensions 44                                     | Outdoor Installations  |
| Dimensional Data 45                                    | Venting of Furnace for Indoor Installations81                |
| OANG Units   | Hot Water Connection Size and Location83                     |
| Unit Clearances  | UV Light Information84                                       |
| Curb Dimensions 48                                     | General84  |
| Dimensional Data 49                                    | Installation   |
| Outdoor WSHP Units 51                                  | Use  |
| OABE Units   | UV-C Lamp Maintenance  |
| OANE Units   | Approved equipment84   |
| Curb Dimensions 55                                     | Main Unit Power84  |
| Dimensional Data                                       | Standard Wiring  |
| OADG Units   | Voltage Imbalance  |
| Indoor Water Source Heat Pump                          | Electrical Phasing (Three-Phase Motors)86                    |
| (WSHP) Units   | Compressor Crankcase Heaters86                               |
| OABF Units   | Main Unit Display and ReliaTel™ Controls .87                 |
| OANF Units   | Field-Installed Control Wiring                               |
| OADG Units   | Control Power Transformer87                                  |
| Unit Weight and Rigging                                | Controls Using 24 Vac88                                      |
| Unit Weights 63  | Controls Using DC Analog Input/Output                        |
| Corner Weights 66                                      | (Standard Low Voltage Multiconductor Wire)88                 |



# **Table of Contents**

| DC Conductors                                   | Modulating Outdoor and Return   |
|---|---|
| Factory-Provided Sensors 89                     | Air Dampers   |
| Start-Up 90                                     | Supply Fan Operation  |
| Indirect Fired Gas Heating                      | Constant Speed Supply Fan117  |
| Start-Up 90                                     | Constant Volume Supply Fan117   |
| Start-Up Procedure                              | Supply Duct Static Control (Multi-Zone VAV)                               |
| Maintenance 95                                  | Space Temperature Control (Single Zone VAV)                               |
| Monthly Maintenance 95                          | Economizer Operation  |
| Filters   | Economizer Mode with Supplemental   |
| Filter Installation                             | Mechanical Cooling118   |
| Supply/Return Air Smoke Detector Maintenance    | Economizer without Mechanical Cooling (Free Cooling)                      |
| Cooling Season 95                               | Ventilation Mode118   |
| Heating Season                                  | Space Control118  |
| Condensate Drain                                | Single Zone VAV118  |
| Condenser Coil Cleaning 96                      | Discharge Air Control   |
| ERV Wheel Maintenance 97                        | Multi-Zone VAV118   |
| ERV Wheel Cleaning 97                           | Dehumidification Mode118  |
| Final Process                                   | Space Control (Lab/Critical Application) with Outdoor Air Damper          |
| Alarms and Troubleshooting                      | Space Control (Lab/Critical Application) without Outdoor Air Damper118    |
| Programmable Logic Control                      | Space Control without Outdoor Air Damper (100 Percent Return Air)         |
| Troubleshooting                                 | Space Control with Outdoor Air Damper119                                  |
| Basic unit checks                               | Single Zone VAV119  |
| Additional Unit Checks                          | Discharge Control with Outdoor Air Damper                                 |
| VFD Programming Parameters 103                  | Discharge Control without Outdoor Air Damper (100 Percent Return Air) 120 |
| Digital Scroll Compressor Controller 107        | Multi-Zone VAV with Outdoor Air Damper .120                               |
| Appendix  | Multi-Zone VAV without Outdoor  |
| Horizon™ OAU Filter Guide 108                   | Air Damper  |
| Field Installation of Smoke Detector Wiring 116 | Heating and Cooling Mode120   |
| Sequence of Operation                           | Heating Mode  |
| Occupied 117                                    | Cooling Mode  |
| Starting Sequence                               | Exhaust Fan Starting Sequence   |
| Two-Position Outdoor Air Damper 117             | Starting Sequence with Isolation  |
| Two-Position Outdoor and Return Air Dampers     | (Actuated) Dampers  |
| Two-Position Return Air Damper 117              | Barometric Dampers121   |
|   | Exhaust Fan Operation   |



# **Table of Contents**

| Return Static Pressure Control 121   | Refrigeration Start-Up               | 27  |
|--|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Constant Volume Control 121  | Indirect Fired Gas Heat Start-Up     | 28  |
| Constant Speed Control 121   | Gas Pressure Settings (Modulating)   | 28  |
| Energy Recovery Wheel (ERV) 121  | Gas Pressure Settings (Two Stage)    | 28  |
| Stop Jog   | Electric Heat Start-Up               | 28  |
| Exhaust Air Bypass Damper Control 121                                      | Heater Data                          | 28  |
| Outdoor Air Bypass Damper Control (without VFD on ERV)                     | Programming                          |     |
| Outdoor Air Bypass Damper (with VFD on ERV)                                | Final Notes                          | 129 |
| Unoccupied Mode Operation 122  | Limited Warranty                     |     |
| Unoccupied Cooling Mode 122  | 1-Year Manufacturer Parts Warranty ′ |     |
| Unoccupied Dehumidification Mode 122                                       | Horizon Models                       | 30  |
| Unoccupied Heating Mode 122  |                                      |     |
| Additional Details on Operation 122  |                                      |     |
| Evaporator Coil Frost Protection 122                                       |                                      |     |
| Compressor Low Ambient Lockout 122   |                                      |     |
| Hot Gas Reheat   |                                      |     |
| Heat Pump Operation  |                                      |     |
| Supplemental Primary Heat 123  |                                      |     |
| Air Source Heat Pumps (ASHP) 123   |                                      |     |
| Frost Avoidance  |                                      |     |
| Demand Defrost Control   |                                      |     |
| Demand Defrost Control Sequence 123  |                                      |     |
| Primary Heater Operation During Defrost Mode                               |                                      |     |
| Outdoor Air Damper Operation in Defrost<br>(Units with Gas, Electric, and  |                                      |     |
| Hot Water Heaters)   |                                      |     |
| Outdoor Air Damper Operation in Defrost (Units with no Primary Heater) 124 |                                      |     |
| Water Source Heat Pumps 124  |                                      |     |
| Split/Dual Exhaust and Return Air Paths 124                                |                                      |     |
| Electric Pre-Heat  |                                      |     |
| Refrigerant Detection System (RDS) 124                                     |                                      |     |
| Start-Up Form Trane® Horizon™ DOAS 126                                     |                                      |     |
| Pre-Start-Up Checklist   |                                      |     |
| Voltages   |                                      |     |
| Actuators  |                                      |     |
| Motor Data 127   |                                      |     |
| Compressor Data 127  |                                      |     |



# **Model Number Descriptions**

## **Horizon Outdoor Air Unit**

#### Model: OAN Rev5

Digit 1, 2 — Unit Type

OA = Outdoor Air

Digit 3 — Cabinet Size

N = 3,750 to 13,500 cfm

#### Digit 4 — Major Design Sequence

Revision 4 Revision 5 Heat Pump Ε Indoor WSHP

#### Digit 5, 6, 7 — Normal Gross Cooling Capacity (MBh)

No Cooling

30 Tons High Efficiency 360 = 35 Tons High Efficiency 420 = 40 Tons High Efficiency 480 =

540 = 45 Tons High Efficiency 600 = 50 Tons High Efficiency 648 = 54 Tons High Efficiency

60 Tons High Efficiency

Digit 8 — Minor Design Sequence Vertical Discharge/Vertical Return

Vertical Discharge/ Horizontal Return

С Horizontal Discharge/ Vertical Return

D Horizontal Discharge/ Horizontal Return

F Vertical Discharge/No Return Horizontal Discharge/No Return

G Vertical Discharge/

Split Vertical Return-Exhaust

Horizontal Discharge/ Split Vertical Return-Exhaust

#### Digit 9 — Voltage Selection

208-230/60/3 460/60/3 = 575/60/3

#### Digit 10 — Reserved for Future Use

#### Digit 11 — Evaporator Type

No Cooling

DX 4-Row

DX 4-Row Interlaced D DX 6-Row Interlaced Glycol/Chilled Water Coil

#### Digit 12 — Hot Gas Reheat

No HGRH

Fin and Tube Modulating Fin and Tube On/Off

#### Digit 13 — Compressor

No Compressors

Α Scroll Compressors

В Digital Scroll (1st Circuit Only) Digital Scroll (1st and 2nd Circuit) С Variable Speed Scroll (1st D

Circuit Only)

Variable Speed Scroll (1st and Ε 2<sup>nd</sup> Circuit)

F Scroll Compressors w/Sound Attenuation Package

Digital Scroll (1st Circuit Only) G w/Sound Attenuation Package

Digital Scroll (1st Circuit and 2<sup>nd</sup> Circuit) w/Sound Attenuation Package

Variable Speed Scroll (1st Circuit Only) w/Sound Attenuation Package

Variable Speed Scroll (1st Circuit and 2<sup>nd</sup> Circuit) w/Sound Attenuation Package

Variable Speed Scroll (1st Circuit), Digital Scroll (2nd Circuit)

М Variable Speed Scroll (1st Circuit), Digital Scroll (2nd Circuit) w/Sound Attenuation Package

#### Digit 14 — Condenser

No Condenser

Air-Cooled Fin and Tube 2 Air-Cooled Fin and Tube

w/Head Pressure On/Off Control Water Cooled DX Condenser

3 Copper/Steel

4 Air-Cooled Fin and Tube w/Head Pressure Variable Speed

8 Water Cooled DX Condenser Copper/Nickel

#### Digit 15 — Refrigerant Capacity Control

No RCC Valve

RCC Valve on 1st Circuit

Low GWP Refrigerant and No RCC G

Low GWP Refrigerant and RCC Н Valve on 1st Circuit

Low GWP Refrigerant and RCC Valve on 1st and 2nd Circuit

#### Digit 16 — Indoor Fan Motor (IFM)

Direct Drive w/VFD

Direct Drive (VFD by Others)

Direct Drive w/Shaft Grounding

Ring w/VFD 5 Special Motor Option

## Digit 17 — Indoor Fan Wheel

120

В 120.6

С 140 =

Ď 140 6

Ε = 160 = 160.6

G = 180

Н = 180.6

J 200

Κ 200.6

ı = 180 × 2

Μ = 180.6 × 2

#### Digit 18 — Indoor Fan Motor Power (hp)

Ε = 1 hp -1800 rpm

F 1 hp - 3600 rpm

1.5 hp – 1800 rpm G =

Η 1.5 hp - 3600 rpm 2 hp - 1800 rpm J

Κ 2 hp - 3600 rpm

L 3 hp - 1800 rpm

М = 3 hp - 3600 rpm

Ν = 5 hp - 1800 rpm

Р 5 hp - 3600 rpm R = 7.5 hp - 1800 rpm

S 7.5 hp - 3600 rpm

Т 10 hp – 1800 rpm

U 10 hp - 3600 rpm

15 hp - 1800 rpm

15 hp – 3600 rpm

#### Digit 19 — Reserved for Future Use

# Digit 20 — Heat Type (PRI/SEC)

No Heat

Α Indirect-Fired (IF)

С Electric - Stage

Electric - SCR Modulating D

Dual Fuel (PRI-IF/SEC-ELEC G -STAGED)

Н Dual Fuel (PRI-ELEC-SCR/SEC-**ELEC-STAGED**)

Hot Water (HW)

No Primary Heat, Secondary L (ELEC-STAGED)

Dual Fuel (PRI-ÉLEC-STAGED/ Ν SEC-ELEC-STAGED)

Q Dual Fuel (PRI-HW/SEC-ELEC -STAGED)

#### Digit 21 — Primary Fuel Type

No Heat

Natural Gas

Propane

3 Electric - Open Coil

5 Hot Water

Natural Gas - 81% Eff.

Propane - 81% Eff.



#### **Model Number Descriptions**

# Digit 22 — Heat Capacity (Primary Heat Source)

|   |   | ,          |             |              |
|---|---|------------|-------------|--------------|
|   |   | <u>IF</u>  | <u>ELEC</u> | Hot Water    |
| 0 | = | No Heat    | No Heat     | No Heat      |
| Α | = | 50 MBh     | 10 kW       | 1 Row/10 FPI |
| В | = | 75 MBh     | 20 kW       | 1 Row/12 FPI |
| С | = | 100 MBh    | 24 kW       | 1 Row/14 FPI |
| D | = | 125 MBh    | 28 kW       | 2 Row/10 FPI |
| Ε | = | 150 MBh    | 32 kW       | 2 Row/12 FPI |
| F | = | 200 MBh    | 40 kW       | 2 Row/14 FPI |
| G | = | 250 MBh    | 48 kW       | 3 Row/10 FPI |
| Н | = | 300 MBh    | 60 kW       | 3 Row/12 FPI |
| J | = | 350 MBh    | 68 kW       | 3 Row/14 FPI |
| K | = | 400 MBh    | 79 kW       |              |
| L | = | 500 MBh    | 99 kW       |              |
| М | = | 600 MBh    | 111 kW      |              |
| Ν | = | 700 MBh    | 119 kW      |              |
| Р | = | 800 MBh    | 139 kW      |              |
| R | = | 1000 MBh   | 159 kW      |              |
| S | = |            | 179 kW      |              |
| Т | = |            | 199 kW      |              |
| U | = |            | 215 kW      |              |
| Χ | = | Special He | ater Optio  | on           |

# Digit 23 — Heat Capacity (Secondary Heat Source)

|   |   | IF          | ELEC                |
|---|---|-------------|---------------------|
| 0 | = | No Secondar | y No Secondary Heat |
|   |   | Heat        | 40.1144             |
| Α | = | 50 MBh      | 10 kW               |
| В | = | 75 MBh      | 20 kW               |
| С | = | 100 MBh     | 24 kW               |
| D | = | 125 MBh     | 28 kW               |
| Ε | = | 150 MBh     | 32 kW               |
| F | = | 200 MBh     | 40 kW               |
| G | = | 250 MBh     | 48 kW               |
| Н | = | 300 MBh     | 60 kW               |
| J | = | 350 MBh     | 68 kW               |
| K | = | 400 MBh     | 79 kW               |
| L | = | 500 MBh     | 99 kW               |
| М | = | 600 MBh     | 111 kW              |
| Ν | = | 700 MBh     | 119 kW              |
| Р | = | 800 MBh     | 139 kW              |
| R | = | 1000 MBh    | 159 kW              |
| S | = |             | 179 kW              |
| Т | = |             | 199 kW              |
| U | = |             | 215 kW              |
|   |   |             |                     |

# Digit 24 — Corrosive Environment Package

0 = No Corrosive Package

1 = S/S Interior, S/S Evap Coil Casing

2 = S/S Interior, Eco Coated Coils

3 = S/S Interior,

Copper/Copper Evap Coil

4 = S/S Coil Casing 5 = S/S Interior Casing

6 = Eco-Coated Coils

7 = S/S Coil Casing with Eco-Coated Coils 8 = Copper/Copper Evap, HGRH Coils

9 = Corrosion Resistant Package

#### Digit 25, 26 — Unit Controls

00 = Non-DDC – Electromechanical

AC = Trane – Discharge Air Control w/BACnet® (No Display)

AD = Trane – Space Control w/BACnet (No Display)

AF = Trane – Discharge Air Control w/BACnet w/Display

AG = Trane – Space Control w/BACnet w/Display

AL = Trane – Multi-Zone VAV Control w/BACnet w/Display

AN = Trane – Multi-Zone VAV Control w/BACnet (No Display)

AP = Trane – Single-Zone VAV Control w/BACnet w/Display

AR = Trane – Single-Zone VAV Control w/BACnet (No Display)

BB = Trane – Space Control w/BACnet
(No Display) w/Thumbwheel

BC = Trane – Space Control w/BACnet w/Display w/Thumbwheel

BG = Trane – Single-Zone VAV Control w/BACnet w/Display w/ Thumbwheel

BJ = Trane – Single-Zone VAV Control w/BACnet (No Display) w/ Thumbwheel

CA = Trane – Lab Space Control w/ BACnet (No Display)

CB = Trane – Lab Space Control w/ BACnet w/Display

CC = Trane – Lab Discharge Air Control w/BACnet (No Display)

CD = Trane – Lab Discharge Air Control w/BACnet w/Display

CE = Trane – Lab Multi-Zone VAV Control w/BACnet (No Display)

CF = Trane – Lab Multi-Zone VAV Control w/BACnet w/Display

CG = Trane – Lab Space Control w/ BACnet (No Display) w/ Thumbwheel

CH = Trane – Lab Space Control w/ BACnet w/Display w/Thumbwheel

DA = Trane – Horizon Thrive Control w/ BACnet (No Display)

DB = Trane – Horizon Thrive Control w/ BACnet w/Display

XX = Control Special

# Digit 27 — Powered Exhaust Fan Motor (PFM) and Exhaust Dampers

0 = No Powered Exhaust

1 = Direct Drive w/VFD and Gravity Dampers

2 = Direct Drive (VFD by Others)

5 = Special Motor Option

6 = Direct Drive w/VFD and Barometric Relief Damper

7 = Direct Drive w/VFD and Isolation Dampers w/End Switch

8 = Barometric Relief Dampers (NO PFM)

# Digit 28 — Powered Exhaust Fan Wheel

0 = No Powered Exhaust

A = 120

B = 120.6C = 140

D = 140.6

E = 160

F = 160.6

G = 180 H = 180.6

H = 180.6J = 200

K = 200.6

 $L = 180 \times 2$ 

 $M = 180.6 \times 2$ 

# Digit 29 — Powered Exhaust Fan Motor Power

0 = No Powered Exhaust

E = 1 hp - 1800 rpm

F = 1 hp - 3600 rpm

G = 1.5 hp – 1800 rpm

H = 1.5 hp - 3600 rpmJ = 2 hp - 1800 rpm

K = 2 hp - 3600 rpm

L = 3 hp - 1800 rpm

M = 3 hp - 3600 rpmN = 5 hp - 1800 rpm

N = 5 hp - 1800 rpmP = 5 hp - 3600 rpm

R = 7.5 hp - 1800 rpm

S = 7.5 hp - 3600 rpm

T = 10 hp - 1800 rpm

U = 10 hp - 3600 rpmV = 15 hp - 1800 rpm

W = 15 hp - 3600 rpm

# Digit 30 — UC600 Hardware Template

= Prior to v8.0

1 = v8.X, v9.X, or v10.X 2 = v11.0 / Thrive v2.1

2 = v11.0 / Thrive v2.1 3 = v11.1 - v11.3 / Thrive v

3 = v11.1 - v11.3 / Thrive v2.1 4 = v12.0 / Thrive v2.2

5 = v12.1 / v12.2 / Thrive v2.3

# Digit 31 — ERV (Requires Powered Exhaust)

0 = No ERV

A = ERV – Composite Construction B = ERV – Composite Construction

with Frost Protection w/VFD

C = ERV – Composite Construction with Bypass

D = ERV – Composite Construction with Frost Protection and Bypass

E = ERV – Aluminum Construction F = ERV – Aluminum Construction

G = ERV – Aluminum Construction with Bypass

H = ERV – Aluminum Construction with Frost Protection and Bypass

#### Digit 32 — ERV Size

0 = No ERV

4 = 4634

5 = 5856

6 = 6488

7 = 68768 = 74122



#### Digit 33 — Damper Options

0 = 100% OA 2-Position Damper 1 = 100% OA 2-Position Damper

w/RA 2-Position Damper

2 = Modulating OA and RA Dampers w/Economizer

3 = 100% OA 2-Position Damper – Class 1A

4 = 100% OA 2-Position Damper w/RA 2-Position Damper – Class 1A

5 = Modulating OA and RA Dampers w/Economizer – Class 1A

6 = 100% RA Opening (No Damper) 7 = 100% RA w/ 2-Position Damper 8 = 100% RA w/ 2-Position Damper –

Class 1A

#### Digit 34 — Filtration Options

A = Aluminum Mesh Intake Filters (ALM)

B = MERV-8,30%, and ALM C = MERV-13, 80%, and ALM D = MERV-14, 95%, and ALM

E = MERV-8 30%, MERV-13 80%, and ALM

F = MERV-8 30%, MERV-14 95%, and ALM

G = MERV-8, 30%, and ALM, with UVC

H = MERV-13, 80%, and ALM, with UVC

J = MERV-14, 95%, and ALM, with UVC

K = MERV-8 30%, MERV-13 80%, ALM, and UVC

L = MERV-8 30%, MERV-14 95%, ALM, and UVC

X = Special Filter Options

# Digit 35 — Smoke Detector (Factory-Installed)

0 = No Smoke Detector

1 = Supply Smoke Detector

2 = Return Smoke Detector

3 = Supply and Return Smoke Detectors

#### Digit 36 — Electrical Options

0 = Non-Fused Disconnect

A = Fused Disconnect Switch

B = Non-Fused Disconnect Switch w/Convenience Outlet

C = Fused Disconnect Switch w/Convenience Outlet

D = Dual Point Power

E = Dual Point Power w/Convenience Outlet

F = 65 SCCR Electrical Rating

w/Non-Fused Disconnect
G = 65 SCCR Electrical Rating

w/Fused Disconnect

H = 65 KAIC Electrical Rating w/Non-Fused Disconnect

J = 65 KAIC Electrical Rating w/Fused Disconnect

K = 65 KAIC Non-Fused w/Convenience Outlet

L = 65 KAIC Fused

w/Convenience Outlet
M = 65 SCCR Non-Fused
w/Convenience Outlet

#### Digit 37 — Airflow Monitoring

0 = No Airflow Monitoring

1 = Airflow Monitoring – ÎFM Piezo Ring

2 = Airflow Monitoring – PE Piezo Ring

3 = Airflow Monitoring – Outdoor Air with Display and IFM w/Piezo Ring

4 = Airflow Monitoring – IFM Piezo Ring and PE Piezo Ring

5 = Airflow Monitoring – Outdoor Air Monitoring w/Display Supply Air and Exhaust Air w/Piezo Rings

#### Digit 38 — Accessories

0 = No Options

A = Hailguards

B = LED Service Light

C = Hailguards and LED Service Light

D = LED Service Light in Exhaust Fan Section

E = LED Service Light in Supply and Exhaust Fan Section

F = Hailguards and LED Service Light in Exhaust Fan Section

G = Hailguards and LED Service Light in Supply and Exhaust Fan Section

#### Digit 39 — Altitude

0 = Sea Level to 1,000 Feet

1 = 1,001 to 2,000 Feet

2 = 2,001 to 3,000 Feet

3 = 3,001 to 4,000 Feet 4 = 4,001 to 5,000 Feet

5 = 5,001 to 6,000 Feet

6 = 6,001 to 7,000 Feet

7 = Above 7,000 Feet



# **Horizon Outdoor Air Unit**

| Model: OADG | Rev6 | and |
|-------------|------|-----|
| OANG Rev6   |      |     |

Digit 1, 2 — Unit Type

OA = Outdoor Air

Digit 3 — Cabinet Size

D = 1,250 to 8,000 cfm N = 5,000 to 20,000 cfm

Digit 4 — Major Design Sequence

G = Revision 6

# Digit 5, 6, 7 — Normal Gross Cooling Capacity (MBh)

000 = No DX Cooling

010 = 10 Tons High Efficiency 012 = 12 Tons High Efficiency 015 = 15 Tons High Efficiency

017 = 17 Tons High Efficiency 020 = 20 Tons High Efficiency 025 = 25 Tons High Efficiency

025 = 25 Ions High Efficiency 030 = 30 Tons High Efficiency 040 = 40 Tons High Efficiency

045 = 45 Tons High Efficiency 050 = 50 Tons High Efficiency 055 = 55 Tons High Efficiency

060 = 60 Tons High Efficiency 065 = 65 Tons High Efficiency 070 = 70 Tons High Efficiency 075 = 75 Tons High Efficiency

080 = 80 Tons High Efficiency

#### Digit 8 — Airflow Configuration

A = Vertical Discharge/No Return
 B = Horizontal Discharge/No Return
 C = Vertical Discharge/Vertical Return

D = Vertical Discharge/Horizontal Return/Exhaust

E = Horizontal Discharge/Vertical Return/Exhaust

F = Horizontal Discharge/Horizontal Return/Exhaust

G = Vertical Discharge/Vertical Return/Vertical Exhaust

H = Vertical Discharge/Vertical Return/Horizontal Exhaust

J = Vertical Discharge/Horizontal Return/Vertical Exhaust

K = Vertical Discharge/Horizontal Return/Horizontal Exhaust

L = Horizontal Discharge/Vertical Return/Vertical Exhaust

M = Horizontal Discharge/Vertical Return/Horizontal Exhaust

N = Horizontal Discharge/Horizontal Return/Vertical Exhaust

P = Horizontal Discharge/Horizontal Return/Horizontal Exhaust

#### Digit 9 — Voltage Selection

1 = 208/60/3 2 = 230–240/60/3 3 = 460/60/3 4 = 575/60/3

#### Digit 10 - Not Used

#### Digit 11 — Indoor Coil Type

0 = No Indoor Coil C = DX 4-Row D = DX 6-Row

 = Glycol/Chilled Water Coil – 4-Row

G = Glycol/Chilled Water Coil – 6-Row

H = Glycol/Chilled Water Coil with Cooney Freeze Block Technology – 4-Row

J = Glycol/Chilled Water Coil with Cooney Freeze Block Technology – 6-Row

#### Digit 12 — Reheat

0 = No Reheat

A = Fin and Tube Modulating HGRH B = Fin and Tube On/Off HGRH

#### Digit 13 — Compressor

0 = No Compressor A = Scroll Compressors

B = Digital Scroll – 1<sup>st</sup> Circuit Only C = Digital Scroll – 1<sup>st</sup> Circuit and 2<sup>nd</sup> Circuit

D = eFlex<sup>™</sup> – 1<sup>st</sup> Circuit Only

E = eFlex – 1st Circuit and 2nd Circuit
F = eFlex – 1st Circuit, Digital Scroll2nd Circuit

#### Digit 14 — Outdoor Coil

0 = No Condenser

1 = Air-cooled Fin and Tube 3 = Water-cooled Copper/Nickel 4 = Water-cooled Copper/Steel

5 = ASHP Fin and Tube 7 = WSHP Copper/Nickel 8 = WSHP Copper/Steel

# Digit 15 — Refrigerant Capacity Control

0 = No RCC Valve

1 = RCC Valve on 1<sup>st</sup> Circuit 2 = RCC Valve on 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Circuit

G = RCC Valve on 1st and 2nd Circuit
G = Low GWP Refrigerant and No RCC
Valve

H = Low GWP Refrigerant and RCC Valve on 1st Circuit

J = Low GWP Refrigerant and RCC Valve on 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Circuit

#### Digit 16 — Heat Type — Primary

0 = No Heat

A = Indirect Fired NG (IF) – Standard Efficiency (80%)

B = Indirect Fired NG (IF) – High Efficiency (82%)

C = Indirect Fire NG (IF) – Premium Efficiency (+90%)

D = Indirect Fired LP (IF) – Standard Efficiency (80%)

E = Indirect Fired LP (IF) – High Efficiency (82%)

F = Indirect Fire LP (IF) – Premium Efficiency (+90%)

G = Hot Water

H = Electric - Staged

J = Electric – SCR Modulating Q = Hot Water – Eco Coated Coils R = Hot Water – S/S Coil Casing
S = Hot Water – S/S Coil Casing with
Eco Coated Coils

#### Digit 17 — Heat Capacity — Primary

|     |      | <u>IF</u>              | ELEC    | HOT WATER       |
|-----|------|------------------------|---------|-----------------|
| 0   | =    | No Heat                |         |                 |
| Α   | =    | 50 MBh                 | 5 kW    | 1 Row/10<br>FPI |
| В   | =    | 75 MBh                 | 10 kW   | 1 Row/12<br>FPI |
| С   | =    | 100 MBh                | 15 kW   | 1 Row/14<br>FPI |
| D   | =    | 125 MBh                | 20 kW   | 2 Row/10<br>FPI |
| Е   | =    | 150 MBh                | 24 kW   | 2 Row/12<br>FPI |
| F   | =    | 200 MBh                | 28 kW   | 2 Row/14<br>FPI |
| G   | =    | 250 MBh                | 32 kW   | 3 Row/10<br>FPI |
| Н   | =    | 300 MBh                | 40 kW   | 3 Row/12<br>FPI |
| J   | =    | 350 MBh                | 48 kW   | 3 Row/14<br>FPI |
| K   | =    | 400 MBh                | 60 kW   |                 |
| L   | =    | 500 MBh                | 68 kW   |                 |
| М   | =    | 500 MBh<br>(Dual 250)  | 79 kW   |                 |
| Ν   | =    | 600 MBh                | 99 kW   |                 |
| Р   | =    | 600 MBh<br>(Dual 300)  | 111 kW  |                 |
| R   | =    | 800 MBh                | 119 kW  |                 |
| S   | =    | 800 MBh<br>(Dual 400)  | 139 kW  |                 |
| Т   | =    | 1000 MBh               | 159 kW  |                 |
| U   | =    | 1000 MBh<br>(Dual 500) | 179 kW  |                 |
| V   | =    | 1200 MBh               | 199 kW  |                 |
| W   | =    |                        | 215 kW  |                 |
| Υ   | =    |                        | 230 kW  |                 |
| Z   | =    |                        | 250 kW  |                 |
| Dig | it 1 | 8 — Heat 1             | уре — 9 | Secondary       |

#### Digit 18 — Heat Type — Secondary

0 = No Secondary Heat 4 = Electric – Staged

5 = Electric – SCR Modulating



#### Digit 19 — Heat Capacity — Secondary

= No Secondary Heat

Δ = 5 kW В 10 kW С 15 kW = 20 kW D Ε 24 kW =

F 28 kW 32 kW G =

Н = 40 kW J = 48 kW 60 kW Κ =

68 kW = 79 kW М 99 kW

Р = 111 kW = 119 kW

#### Digit 20 - Not Used

#### Digit 21 — Supply Fan Motor

1 hp - 1800 rpm 1 hp - 3600 rpm 1.5 hp – 1800 rpm С = D 1.5 hp - 3600 rpm Ε 2 hp - 1800 rpm 2 hp - 3600 rpm = G 3 hp - 1800 rpm 3 hp – 3600 rpm = Н 5 hp - 1800 rpm Κ = 5 hp - 3600 rpm 7.5 hp - 1800 rpm 7.5 hp - 3600 rpmΜ = 10 hp – 1800 rpm N 10 hp - 3600 rpm Р 15 hp – 1800 rpm R

#### Digit 22 — Supply Fan Motor Type

Direct Drive w/VFD Direct Drive (VFD by Others) 2 3 Direct Drive w/Shaft Grounding Ring w/VFD

15 hp - 3600 rpm

20 hp – 1800 rpm

20 hp - 3600 rpm

#### Digit 23, 24 — Supply Fan Wheel Diameter

AA = 12-in. Wheel

S

Т

U

AB = 12-in. - 60% Width Wheel

AC = 14-in. Wheel

AD = 14-in. - 60% Width Wheel

AF = 16-in. Wheel

16-in. - 60% Width Wheel

AG = 18-in. Wheel

AH = 18-in. - 60% Width Wheel

AJ = 20-in. Wheel

AK = 20-in. - 60% Width Wheel

AL = 22-in. Wheel

AM = 22-in. - 60% Width Wheel

AN = 25-in. Wheel

25-in. - 60% Width Wheel

BG = Dual 18-in. Wheel

BH = Dual 18-in. - 60% Width Wheel

Dual 20-in. Wheel BJ =

Dual 20-in. - 60% Width Wheel

Dual 22-in. Wheel

BM = Dual 22-in. - 60% Width Wheel

BN = Dual 25-in. Wheel

BP = Dual 25-in. - 60% Width Wheel

#### Digit 25 — Exhaust Fan Motor

0 No Powered Exhaust 1 hp – 1800 rpm 1 hp – 3600 rpm Α В = С 1.5 hp - 1800 rpm D 1.5 hp – 3600 rpm Ε 2 hp - 1800 rpm 2 hp - 3600 rpm G = 3 hp – 1800 rpm 3 hp – 3600 rpm 5 hp – 1800 rpm Н 5 hp – 3600 rpm Κ L 7.5 hp - 1800 rpm7.5 hp – 3600 rpm = M Ν 10 hp – 1800 rpm Р 10 hp - 3600 rpm R 15 hp – 1800 rpm 15 hp - 3600 rpm S = 20 hp - 1800 rpm

#### Digit 26 — Exhaust Fan Motor Type

20 hp – 3600 rpm

0 No Powered Exhaust Direct Drive w/VFD

U

Direct Drive (VFD by Others) 2 3 Direct Drive w/Shaft Grounding Ring w/VFD

#### Digit 27, 28 — Exhaust Fan Wheel Diameter

00 = No Powered Exhaust

AA = 12-in. Wheel AB = 12-in. - 60% Width Wheel

AC = 14-in. Wheel

14-in. - 60% Width Wheel AD =

AE = 16-in. Wheel

AF = 16-in. - 60% Width Wheel

AG = 18-in. Wheel

AH = 18-in. - 60% Width Wheel

AJ = 20-in. Wheel

AK = 20-in. - 60% Width Wheel

AL = 22-in. Wheel

AM = 22-in. - 60% Width Wheel

AN = 25-in. Wheel

25-in. - 60% Width Wheel AP =

BG = Dual 18-in. Wheel

Dual 18-in. - 60% Width Wheel BH =

BJ = Dual 20-in. Wheel

BK = Dual 20-in. - 60% Width Wheel

BI = Dual 22-in. Wheel

Dual 22-in. - 60% Width Wheel BM =

Dual 25-in. Wheel RN =

BP = Dual 25-in. - 60% Width Wheel

#### Digit 29 — Powered Exhaust Fan Motor (PFM) and Exhaust Dampers

n No Piezo Ring

Supply Fan Piezo Ring Exhaust Fan Piezo Ring 2 3 Supply Fan Piezo Ring and Exhaust Fan Piezo Ring

# Digit 30 - Not Used

#### Digit 31 — Unit Controls

0 = No Controls

1 Space Control

2 Discharge Air Control

3 Multi-Zone VAV 4

Single-Zone VAV

5 Trane – Lab Space Control 6 Trane - Lab Discharge Air Control

Trane - Lab Multi-Zone VAV

Control

8

Horizon Thrive Control

## Digit 32 — Building Interface

= No Controls 0 **BACnet®** 

## Digit 33 — Filter Options

0 = No Filters MERV-8, 30% Α = MERV-13. 80% В

С = MERV-14, 95%

D = MERV-8 30%, MERV-13 80% Ε MERV-8 30%, MERV-14 95%

#### Digit 34 — Energy Recovery

No Energy Recovery

ERV - Composite Construction with Bypass for Frost Protection

2 ERV – Composite Construction with Frost Protection w/VFD

3 ERV – Aluminum Construction with Bypass for Frost Protection

ERV - Aluminum Construction with Frost Protection w/VFD

#### Digit 35 — Energy Recover Option, **Purge**

= No Purge = Purge

#### Digit 36 — Energy Recover Wheel Size

0 = No ERV

Α = 3014

В = 3622

= С 4136

Ď = 4634 Ε = 5262

F = 5856

G = 6488

Н = 6876

J = 74122

= Κ 81146

= 86170 1

M = 92180

#### Digit 37 — Energy Recovery Option, **Rotation Sensor**

No Rotation Sensor

**Rotation Sensor** 

#### Digit 38 — Damper Options

100% OA 2-Position Damper

100% OA 2-Position Damper 2 w/RA 2-Position Damper

3 Modulating OA and RA Dampers w/Economizer

Modulating OA Damper 4

5 Manually Adjusted OA Damper

6 100% RA Opening (No Damper)

100% RA w/ 2-Position Damper



#### **Model Number Descriptions**

#### Digit 39 — Exhaust Dampers

= No Exhaust Dampers **Gravity Dampers** В **Isolation Dampers** 

С **Barometric Relief Dampers** 

#### Digit 40 — Not Used

#### Digit 41 — Electrical Options

Terminal Block - No Factory Installed Disconnect

Non-Fused Disconnect В **Fused Disconnect Switch** 65 SCCR Electrical Rating C w/Non-Fused Disconnect

D 65 SCCR Electrical Rating w/Fused Disconnect

Ε 65 KAIC Electrical Rating w/Non-Fused Disconnect

65 KAIC Electrical Rating w/Fused Disconnect

G **Dual Point Power** 

**Dual Point Power 65 KAIC** Н

**Dual Point Power 65 SCCR** 

#### Digit 42 — Corrosive Environment **Package**

n = No Corrosive Package = **Eco Coated Coils** 

R S/S Interior C = S/S Coil Casing

S/S Coil Casing with Eco Coated D Coils

Ε S/S Interior, Eco Coated Coils = Corrosion Resistant Package

#### Digit 43 — Outdoor Air Monitoring

No Outdoor Air Monitoring

= Airflow Probes

#### Digit 44 — Condenser Fan Options

No Condenser Fans

Standard Condenser Fan

Passive Head Pressure Control В

C Active Head Pressure Control ECM Condenser Fans with Active Head Pressure Control

Ε ECM Condenser Fans with Active Head Pressure Control for Sound Attenuation

#### Digit 45 — Compressor Sound **Blankets and Sound Attenuation**

No Sound Attenuation Package Compressor Sound Blankets R Compressor Sound Blankets

with Sound Attenuation Condenser Fans

#### Digit 46 — Smoke Detector

No Smoke Detector 0

Supply Smoke Detector

Return Smoke Detector 2 3 Supply and Return Smoke Detector

Supply Smoke Detector (Factory 1 Provided/Field Installed)

Return Smoke Detector (Factory 5 Provided/Field Installed)

Supply and Return Smoke 6 Detector (Factory Provided/Field Installed)

#### Digit 47 — Hailguards

No Hailguards 0 =

Hailguards

= Outdoor Coil Wind Blockers

#### Digit 48 — Service Lights

No Service Lights

Supply Fan Section Service Light В Exhaust Fan Section Service

Liaht

С Supply and Exhaust Fan Section Service Light

#### Digit 49 — UV Lights

0 = No UV Lights = UV Lights

#### Digit 50 — Not Used

#### Digit 51 — Unit Installation Location

A = Outdoor = Indoor

#### Digit 52 — Convenience Outlet

 No Convenience Outlet = Convenience Outlet

#### Digit 53 — Controls Display

= No Display

1 TD-7 Factory Installed

TD-7 Remote Mounted

#### Digit 54 — Cooling Controls

No ReliaTel™

= ReliaTel Α

ReliaTel with BCIR Card

#### Digit 55 — Face and Bypass on Indoor Coil

No Face and Bypass

#### Digit 56 — Thermostat

No Thermostat

Thumbwheel Thermostat

#### Digit 57 — Altitude

= Sea Level to 1000 Feet

1001 to 2000 Feet

2 = 2001 to 3000 Feet

3001 to 4000 Feet 4001 to 5000 Feet

5001 to 6000 Feet

6001 to 7000 Feet 6

Above 7000 Feet

#### Digit 58 — Condensate Overflow **Switch**

No Condensate Overflow Switch

= Condensate Overflow Switch

#### Digit 59 — Frostat

= No Frostat™

Frostat Installed

# Digit 60 — Not Used

#### Digit 61 — Outdoor Coil Fluid Type

0 = None

1 = Water

2 = Ethylene Glycol

Propylene Glycol

4 = Methanol

5 = Other

#### Digit 62 — Minimum Damper Leakage

= Standard = Class 1A

# Digit 63, 64 — UC600 Hardware **Template**

00 = Prior to Hardware Template

AA = v7 X AB = v8.X AC = v9.X

AD = v10 0

AE = v11.0 / Thrive v2.1 AF = v11.1 / Thrive v2.1

AG = v11.2 / Thrive v2.1 AH = v11.3 / Thrive v2.1

AK = v12.0 / Thrive v2.2AL = v12.1 / v12.2 / Thrive v2.3

Digit 65, 66, 67, 68, 69 — Reserved for Future Use



# **Horizon Outdoor Air Unit**

#### Model: OAB Rev5

Digit 1, 2 — Unit Type

OA = Outdoor Air

Digit 3 — Cabinet Size

B = 500 to 3,000 cfm

Digit 4 — Major Design Sequence

D = Revision 1 E = Heat Pump F = Indoor WSHP

Digit 5, 6, 7 — Normal Gross Cooling Capacity (MBh)

000 = No Cooling

036 = 3 Tons High Efficiency 048 = 4 Tons High Efficiency 060 = 5 Tons High Efficiency 072 = 6 Tons High Efficiency 084 = 7 Tons High Efficiency

084 = 7 Tons High Efficiency 096 = 8 Tons High Efficiency 108 = 9 Tons High Efficiency

Digit 8 — Minor Design Sequence

A = Vertical Discharge/Vertical Return

B = Vertical Discharge/Horizontal
Return

C = Horizontal Discharge/Vertical Return

D = Horizontal Discharge/Horizontal Return

E = Vertical Discharge/No Return F = Horizontal Discharge/No Return

Digit 9 — Voltage Selection

3 = 208-230/60/3 4 = 460/60/3 5 = 575/60/3

Digit 10 — Reserved for Future Use

Digit 11 — Evaporator Type

0 = No Cooling B = DX 4-Row

C = DX 4-Row Interlaced D = DX 6 Row Interlaced F = Glycol/Chilled Water Coil

Digit 12 — Hot Gas Reheat

0 = No HGRH

1 = Fin and Tube Modulating 2 = Fin and Tube On/Off Digit 13 — Compressor

0 = No Compressors A = Scroll Compressors

B = Digital Scroll (1st Circuit Only)
C = Digital Scroll (1st Circuit and 2nd
Circuit)

D = Variable Speed Scroll (1st Circuit Only)

E = Variable Speed Scroll (1st Circuit and 2nd Circuit)

F = Scroll Compressors w/Sound Attenuation Package

G = Digital Scroll (1st Circuit Only) w/Sound Attenuation Package H = Digital Scroll (1st Circuit and 2nd

H = Digital Scroll (1<sup>st</sup> Circuit and 2<sup>nt</sup> Circuit) w/Sound Attenuation
 Package

J = Variable Speed Scroll (1st Circuit Only) w/Sound Attenuation Package

 K = Variable Speed Scroll (1<sup>st</sup> Circuit and 2<sup>nd</sup> Circuit) w/Sound Attenuation Package

L = Variable Speed Scroll (1st Circuit),
Digital Scroll (2nd Circuit)

M = Variable Speed Scroll (1st Circuit), Digital Scroll (2nd Circuit) w/Sound Attenuation Package

Digit 14 — Condenser

0 = No Condenser

1 = Air Cooled Fin and Tube

2 = Air Cooled Fin and Tube w/Head Pressure On/Off Control

3 = Water Cooled DX Condenser Copper/Steel

4 = Air Cooled Fin and Tube w/Head Pressure Variable Speed

8 = Water Cooled DX Condenser Copper/Nickel

Digit 15 — Refrigerant Capacity Control

0 = No RCC Valve

A = RCC Valve on 1<sup>st</sup> Circuit

B = RCC Valve on 1st and 2nd Circuit

G = Low GWP Refrigerant and No RCC Valve

H = Low GWP Refrigerant and RCC Valve on 1<sup>st</sup> Circuit

J = Low GWP Refrigerant and RCC Valve on 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>nd</sup> Circuit

Digit 16 — Indoor Fan Motor (IFM)

1 = Direct Drive w/VFD 4 = Special Motor Option

Digit 17 — Indoor Fan Wheel

J = 120.6 K = 140.6 L = 100.6 Digit 18 — Indoor Fan Motor (hp)

ECM BELT DRIVE DIRECT DRIVE

F = 1 hp - 1800 rpm F = 1 hp - 3600 rpm G = 1.5 hp - 1800 rpm Н 1.5 hp - 3600 rpm J = 2 hp - 1800 rpm K = 2 hp - 3600 rpm L = 3 hp - 1800 rpm 3 hp - 3600 rpm M =N = 5 hp - 1800 rpm P = 5 hp - 3600 rpm

Digit 19 — Reserved for Future Use

Digit 20 — Heat Type (PRI/SEC)

0 = No Heat

A = Indirect Fired (IF)

C = Electric - Staged

D = Electric – SCR Modulating

G = Dual Fuel (PRI-IF/SEC-ELEC-STAGED)

H = Dual Fuel (PRI-ELEC-SCR/SEC-ELEC-STAGED)

J = Hot water (HW)

L = No Primary Heat, Secondary ELEC-STAGED

N = Dual Fuel (PRI-ELEC-STAGED/ SEC-ELEC-STAGED)

Q = Dual Fuel (PRI-HW/SEC-ELEC-STAGED)

T = Dual Fuel (PRI-IF/SEC-ELEC-

U = Dual Fuel (PRI-ELEC-SCR/SEC-ELEC-SCR)

V = No Primary Heat, Secondary ELEC-SCR

W = Dual Fuel (PRI-ELEC-STAGED/ SEC-ELEC-SCR)

Y = Dual Fuel (PRI-HW/SEC-ELEC-SCR)

X = Special Heat Option

Digit 21 — Primary Fuel Type

0 = No Heat

1 = Natural Gas

2 = Propane

3 = Electric – Open Coil 4 = Electric – Sheathed Coil

5 = Hot Water

7 = Nature Gas – 81% Eff.

8 = Propane - 81% Eff.



#### **Model Number Descriptions**

# Digit 22 — Heater Capacity — Primary Heat Source

|   |   | •         |             |                 |
|---|---|-----------|-------------|-----------------|
|   |   | <u>IF</u> | <b>ELEC</b> | HOT WATER       |
| 0 | = | No Heat   | No Heat     | No Heat         |
| Α | = | 50 MBh    | 5 kW        | 1 Row/10<br>FPI |
| В | = | 75 MBh    | 10 kW       | 1 Row/12<br>FPI |
| С | = | 100 MBh   | 15 kW       | 1 Row/14<br>FPI |
| D | = | 125 MBh   | 20 kW       | 2 Row/10<br>FPI |
| Ε | = | 150 MBh   | 24 kW       | 2 Row/12<br>FPI |
| F | = | 200 MBh   | 28 kW       | 2 Row/14<br>FPI |
| G | = |           | 32 kW       | 3 Row/10<br>FPI |
| Н | = |           | 40 kW       | 3 Row/12<br>FPI |
| J | = |           | 48 kW       | 3 Row/14<br>FPI |
| K | = |           | 60 kW       |                 |
| L | = |           | 68 kW       |                 |
| М | = |           | 79 kW       |                 |
| Ν | = |           | 99 kW       |                 |
| Р | = |           | 111 kW      |                 |
| R | = |           | 119 kW      |                 |
| Χ | = | Spec      | cial Heater | Option          |

# Digit 23 — Heat Capacity — Secondary Heat Source

#### **ELEC**

0 = No Secondary Heat A = 5 kW B = 10 kW C = 15 kW

# Digit 24 — Corrosive Environment Package

0 = No Corrosive Package
 1 = S/S Interior, S/S Coil Casing
 2 = S/S Interior, Eco Coated Coils
 3 = S/S Interior, Copper/Copper Evap Coil

4 = S/S Coil Casing 5 = S/S Interior 6 = Eco Coated Coils

7 = S/S Coil Casing with Eco Coated

Coils
8 = Copper/Copper Evap, HGRH Coils

9 = Corrosion Resistant Package

#### Digits 25, 26 — Unit Controls

00 = Non DDC - Electromechanical
AC = Trane - Discharge Air Control
w/BACnet (No Display)
AD = Trane - Space Control w/BACnet
(No Display)

AF = Trane – Discharge Air Control w/BACnet w/Display

AG = Trane – Space Control W/BACnet w/Display

AL = Trane – Multi-Zone Vav Control w/BACnet w/Display

AN = Trane – Multi-Zone Vav Control w/BACnet (No Display) AP = Trane – Single-Zone Vav Control

w/BACnet w/Display
AR = Trane - Single-Zone Vav Control

w/BACnet (No Display)
BB = Trane – Space Control w/BACnet

(No Display) w/Thumbwheel
BC = Trane – Space Control w/BACnet
w/Display w/Thumbwheel

BG = Trane – Śingle-Zone Vav Control w/BACnet w/Display w/Thumbwheel

BJ = Trane – Single-Zone Vav Control w/BACnet (No Display) w/Thumbwheel

CA = Trane – Lab Space Control w/BACnet (No Display)

CB = Trane – Lab Space Control w/BACnet w/Display

CC = Trane – Lab Discharge Air Control w/BACnet (No Display)

CD = Trane – Lab Discharge Air Control w/BACnet w/Display

CE = Trane – Lab Multi-Zone Vav Control w/BACnet (No Display)

CF = Trane – Lab Multi-Żone Vav Control w/BACnet w/Display

CG = Trane – Lab Space Control w/BACnet (No Display) w/Thumbwheel

CH = Trane – Lab Space Control w/BACnet w/Display w/Thumbwheel

DA = Trane – Horizon Thrive Control w/BACnet (No Display)

DB = Trane – Horizon Thrive Control w/BACnet w/Display

XX = Control Special

# Digit 27 — Powered Exhaust Fan Motor (PFM) and Exhaust Dampers

0 = No Powered Exhaust 1 = Direct Drive w/VFD 5 = Special Motor Option

9 = Barometric Relief Dampers (No

A = Direct Drive w/VFD and Barometric Relief Damper

B = Direct Drive w/VFD and Isolation Dampers w/End Switch

# Digit 28 — Powered Exhaust Fan Wheel

0 = No Powered Exhaust

J = 120.6 K = 140.6 L = 100.6

# Digit 29 — Powered Exhaust Fan Motor (hp)

|   |   | <u>ECM</u>            | DIRECT DRIVE      |
|---|---|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 0 | = | No Powered<br>Exhaust |                   |
| Е | = |                       | 1 hp – 1800 rpm   |
| F | = |                       | 1 hp – 3600 rpm   |
| G | = |                       | 1.5 hp – 1800 rpm |
| Н | = |                       | 1.5 hp – 3600 rpm |
| J | = |                       | 2 hp – 1800 rpm   |
| K | = |                       | 2 hp – 3600 rpm   |
| L | = |                       | 3 hp – 1800 rpm   |
| М | = |                       | 3 hp – 3600 rpm   |
| Ν | = |                       | 5 hp – 1800 rpm   |
| Р | = |                       | 5 hp - 3600 rpm   |

# Digit 30 — UC600 Hardware Template

- = Prior to v8.0 1 = v8.X, v9.X, or v10.X

2 = v11.0 / Thrive v2.1 3 = v11.1 - v11.3 / Thrive v2.1

4 = v12.0 / Thrive v2.2 5 = v12.1 / v12.2 / Thrive v2.3

# Digit 31 — ERV (Requires Powered Exhaust)

0 = No ERV

A = ERV – Composite Construction w/Bypass

B = ERV – Composite Construction with Frost Protection w/VFD C = FRV – Aluminum Construction

C = ERV – Aluminum Construction w/Bypass

D = ERV – Aluminum Construction with Frost Protection w/VFD

#### Digit 32 — ERV Size

0 = No ERV 1 = 3014 2 = 3622

8

#### Digit 33 — Damper Options

0 = 100% OA 2-Position Damper 1 = 100% OA 2-Position Damper w/RA 2-Position Damper

2 = Modulating OA and RA Dampers w/Economizer

3 = 100% OA 2-Position Damper – Class 1A

4 = 100% OA 2-Position Damper w/RA 2-Position Damper – Class 1A

5 = Modulating OA and RA Dampers w/Economizer – Class 1A

6 = 100% RA Opening (No Damper) 7 = 100% RA w/2-Position Damper

= 100% RA w/2-Position Damper – Class 1A



#### Digit 34 — Filtration Options

= No Filters

MERV-8, 30%

= MERV-13, 80% C

= MERV-14, 95%

MERV-8 30%, MERV-13 80%

MERV-8 30%, MERV-14 95%

G MERV-8, 30%, with UVC

MERV-13, 80%, with UVC Н

MERV-14, 95%, with UVC

MERV-8 30%, MERV-13 80%, and UVC

MERV-8 30%, MERV-14 95%, and UVC

Χ Special Filter Options

#### Digit 35 — Smoke Detector — **Factory Installed**

No Smoke Detector Λ

Supply Smoke Detector

Return Smoke Detector 2

3 Supply and Return Smoke Detectors

#### Digit 36 — Electrical Options

Terminal Block

Non-Fused Disconnect

**Fused Disconnect Switch** В

Non-Fused Disconnect w/

Convenience Outlet D

= Fused Disconnect Switch w/ Convenience Outlet

**Dual Point Power** Ε

Dual Point Power w/Convenience Outlet

65 SCCR Electrical Rating w/Non-G **Fused Disconnect** 

65 SCCR Electrical Rating w/

**Fused Disconnect** 

65 KAIC Electrical Rating w/Non-**Fused Disconnect** 

65 KAIC Electrical Rating w/Fused Κ

Disconnect

65 KAIC Non-Fused

w/Convenience Outlet

65 KAIC Fused w/Convenience

Outlet

Ν = 65 SCCR Non-Fused w/Convenience Outlet

#### Digit 37 — Airflow Monitoring

No Airflow Monitoring

Airflow Monitoring - IFM Piezo Ring

2 Airflow Monitoring - PE Piezo Ring

Airflow Monitoring – Outdoor Air 3 with Display and IFM w/Piezo Ring

4 Airflow Monitoring - IFM Piezo Ring and PE Piezo Ring

Airflow Monitoring - OA w/Display 5 Supply and Exhaust Air w/Piezo Rings

6 Airflow Monitoring - Outdoor Air Monitoring for Direct Fired Heat

#### Digit 38 — Accessories

No Options

= Hailguards

Hailguards and LED Service Light В = in Supply Fan Section

С LED Service Light in Supply Fan Section

Hailguards and LED Service Light D in Exhaust Fan Section

Ε Hailguards and LED Service Light in Supply and Exhaust Fan Section

LED Service Light in Exhaust Fan F Section

LED Service Light in Supply and G **Exhaust Fan Section** 

#### Digit 39 — Altitude

Sea Level to 1.000 feet

1,001 to 2,000 feet

2 2,001 to 3,000 feet

3.001 to 4.000 feet 3

4,001 to 5,000 feet

5 5,001 to 6,000 feet

6,001 to 7,000 feet 6 =

Above 7,000 feet



# **General Information**

## **Overview of Manual**

**Note:** One copy of this document ships inside the control panel of each unit and is customer property. It must be retained by the units maintenance personnel.

This booklet describes proper installation, operation, and maintenance procedures for air cooled systems. By carefully reviewing the information within this manual and following the instructions, the risk of improper operation and/or component damage will be minimized.

It is important that periodic maintenance be performed to help assure trouble free operation. A maintenance schedule is provided at the end of this manual. Should equipment failure occur, contact a qualified service organization with qualified, experienced HVAC technicians to properly diagnose and repair this equipment.

# **Model Number Description**

All products are identified by a multiple-character model number that precisely identifies a particular type of unit. An explanation of the alphanumeric identification code is provided (see "Model Number Descriptions," p. 11). Its use will enable the owner/operator, installing contractors, and service engineers to define the operation, specific components, and other options for any specific unit.

When ordering replacement parts or requesting service, be sure to refer to the specific model number and serial number printed on the unit nameplate.

# **Unit Nameplate**

A Mylar<sup>®</sup> unit nameplate is located on the units corner support next to the control box. It includes the unit model number, serial number, electrical characteristics, refrigerant charge, as well as other pertinent unit data.

# **Wiring Diagrams**

Unit-specific wiring diagrams are included inside the control cabinet. The diagrams are laminated and adhered to the inner door for quick reference.

# **Compressor Nameplate**

The nameplate for the compressors are located on the side of the compressor.

# **Unit Description**

Before shipment, each unit is leak tested, dehydrated, charged with refrigerant and compressor oil, and run tested for proper control operation.

The condenser coils are aluminum fin, mechanically bonded to copper tubing.

Direct-drive, vertical discharge condenser fans are provided with built-in thermal overload protection.

The Outdoor Air Unit Main Unit Display and ReliaTel™ Control Module (RTRM) are microelectronic control systems. The acronym RTRM is used extensively throughout this document when referring to the control system network. The RTRM is for refrigeration safety control, not for main unit controls.

The main unit display and the RTRM are mounted in the Main Control Panel. The main unit display and RTRM receive information from sensors and customer binary contacts to satisfy the applicable request for ventilation, cooling, dehumidification and heating.

# **Testing**

The minimum test pressure for the low side of the system shall be the low side design pressure and the minimum test pressure for the high side of the system shall be the high side design pressure. Unless the high side of the system cannot be isolated from the low side of the system in which case the entire system shall be pressure tested to the low side design pressure. Refer to the unit nameplate.

The range of external static pressures at which the Horizon OAU equipment was tested: 0.1 to 4 esp.

# Indoor Fan Failure Input

The Indoor Fan Failure Switch (IFFS) is connected to verify indoor fan operation.

When there is a call for the indoor fan to be energized, the differential pressure switch, connected to the main unit display, must prove airflow within 30 seconds or the main unit display will shut off all mechanical operations, lock the system out and send a diagnostic alarm to the unit display. The system will remain locked out until a reset is initiated through the main unit controller via the alarm reset function on the unit display.

# Low Pressure Control ReliaTel Control

This input incorporates the compressor low pressure control (CLP 1/2) of each refrigeration circuit.

If this circuit is open before the compressor is started, the ReliaTel control will not allow the affected compressor to operate. Anytime this circuit is opened for 1 continuous second during compressor operation, the compressor for that circuit is immediately turned Off.

The compressor will remain locked out for 3 hours before being allowed to operate.

# High Pressure Control ReliaTel Control

The compressor high pressure controls (CHP 1/2/3/4) are wired in series between the compressor outputs on RTRM1 (CHP 1/2) and RTRM2 (CHP 3/4) and the compressor contactor coils. If one of the high pressure control switches opens, the respective RTRM senses a lack of current while calling for cooling and locks the compressor out.

On dual circuit units, if the high pressure control opens, the compressor on the affected circuit is locked out. A manual reset for the affected circuit is required.

# Space Temperature/Humidity Sensor

All units ordered with Space Control or Single Zone VAV Control (with or without thumbwheel) come standard with a hardwired space temperature/humidity combo sensor (BAYSENS036A). In all cases when controlling to space conditions, a space temperature sensor is required, either using the factory provided hardwired sensor, a field provided wireless sensor, or communicated via BAS.

Space humidity is required on all lab/critical applications, and is highly recommended (but not required) for other applications controlling to space conditions.

# **High Temperature Sensor**

The Discharge Air Temperature Sensor (DTC) supplies a continuous signal to the main unit controller. Factory setting for Discharge Air Temperature (DTC) Discharge Air Temperature Setpoint Maximum (MDTS) is 120°F (range of 80°F to 120°F) for gas heat and 90°F for electric heat. If DAT exceeds Discharge Air High Temperature Cutoff (DHCS) of 125°F for 10 minutes, the unit will shutdown and require manual restart.

# Outdoor Air Temperature and Relative Humidity Sensor

This factory installed combination outdoor air sensor located in the outdoor air hood is designed to sense both outdoor air temperature and relative humidity for use by the microprocessor controller to make required ventilation, cooling, dehumidification, and heating decisions.

# Control Input (Occupied/ Unoccupied)

Control input (occupied / unoccupied) terminals are provided on the terminal strip labeled OAUTS for a field installed dry contact or switch closure to put the unit in the occupied or unoccupied modes.

# **Demand Control CO<sub>2</sub> Ventilation**

Demand control ventilation, when enabled, will respond to a  $CO_2$  sensor and modulate the dampers to meet ventilation needs. This operation requires the unit to be equipped with modulating outdoor and return air dampers. The  $CO_2$  sensor/ signal must be field provided and installed before the points are enabled in existing programming.

## **Hot Gas Reheat**

This option shall consist of a hot-gas reheat coil located on the leaving air side of the evaporator. For detailed unit control and operational modes, see "Sequence of Operation," p. 117.

# 100 Percent Outdoor Air Hood with Damper and Filters

Factory-installed and -integrated 100 percent outdoor air hood with damper controlled by a direct coupled actuator and 2 inch permanent and washable aluminum mesh filters (mist eliminators) removable through a hinged access panel. The unit can be factory provided with an optional 100 percent return air damper controlled by a direct coupled actuator that is electrically interlocked with the outdoor air damper.

# Modulating Indirect Fired Gas Burner

The unit will have fully modulating, high turn-down, indirect fired gas heat. The heating section will include high turn-down burners and a stainless steel tubular heat exchanger. The heat exchanger will be constructed of type 439 stainless steel and be a tubular design capable of draining internal condensate. External flue to be constructed of type 304 stainless steel.

Units will be suitable for use with natural gas or Liquid Propane (LP) gas.

# Through-the-Base Electrical with Disconnect Switch

Factory installed 3-pole, molded case disconnect switch with provisions for through-the-base electrical connections will be included. The disconnect switch, with integral overcurrent circuit breaker, will be installed in the unit in a water tight enclosure with access through a hinged door. Factory wiring will be provided from the switch to the unit high voltage terminal block. The switch will be UL/CSA agency recognized.

# Through-the-Side Gas Piping

The unit will include provisions for installing through-the-side gas piping. The factory installed option will have all piping necessary including an external shut-off piping yoke with preassembled, manual gas shut-off valve, elbows, and union. The manual shut-off valve will include an 1/8 inch (3.17 mm) NPT pressure tap. This assembly will require minor field labor to

#### **General Information**

install. A backup wrench should be used during installation to avoid damage to the gas line.

# **Hinged Access Doors**

Hinged access doors with hold open brackets will be factory-installed.

# **Modulating Electric Heat**

The unit may have four stage or fully modulating SCR controlled electric heat. The primary heating section will include open coil heating elements, automatic and manual cutouts, low voltage controls, air proving switch, maximum 48 amps per circuit, and fusing for heaters over 48 amps. For ductwork installation, see "Ductwork," p. 70.

# Supply and Exhaust Piezo Fan Rings

Airflow monitoring measuring fan suction and cone pressure differential to calculate fan airflow.

## **ERV**

Energy Recovery Wheels rotate between the incoming outdoor air stream and the building exhaust air stream. As the wheel rotates, it transfers a percentage of the heat and moisture differential from one air stream to the other. Instead of wasting energy in the exhaust airstream, it is temporarily captured by the energy transfer media and then released to preheat, pre-cool, humidify, or dehumidify the incoming air.

#### **Hot Water Coils**

This option consists of a hot water coil located in the primary heat position. Hot water valve is field provided.

# **Suction Pressure Monitoring**

All units with compressors will come standard with a refrigeration suction pressure transducer on Circuit 1, and on Circuit 2 when the unit has a digital scroll on the second circuit.

# **Outdoor and Return Air Dampers**

#### 2-Position Outdoor Air Damper

2-position outdoor air damper without a return air damper is an open/close damper that is energized with 24 Vac when the unit begins its start-up sequence and energizes the coil on the OADR relay. There is an end switch wired back to the controller, factory set to close at 30 to 50 percent damper position, using a rotary dial on the actuator, to begin the supply fan sequence. The damper should remain closed while the unit is off, with or without power.

# 2-Position Outdoor and Return Air Dampers

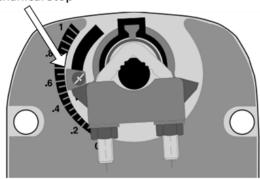
2-position outdoor and return air dampers are open/close dampers energized with 24 Vac. Each actuator is connected to the OADR relay, with the outdoor air damper on the normally open (NO) and the return air damper on the normally closed (NC). With no power on the unit, both dampers are closed. As the unit is powered, the NC contact is closed, and the return air damper opens. Once the start-up sequence begins and OADR is energized, the NO contact is closed and the NC contact is opened, thus opening the outdoor air damper, and closing the return air damper.

## Mixed Air Setup on 2-Position Dampers

2-Position outdoor and return air dampers can be setup for a mixed airflow using mechanical stops at any position between 0 and 90°. The mechanical stops are factory provided, installed on the actuators. With the damper closed, loosen the set screw on the stop and set it in position. Depending on static pressures, setting the position on the return air damper may not be necessary to achieve proper mixed airflows. Depending on access, the clamp may need to be loosened and repositioned to set the mechanical stop in position.

Figure 1. Mechanical stop on a 2-position actuator

**Mechanical Stop** 



#### 2-Position Return Air Damper

2-position return air damper without an outdoor air damper is an open/close damper that is energized with 24 Vac when the unit begins its start-up sequence and energizes the coil on the OADR relay. There is an end switch wired back to the controller, factory set to close at 30 to 50 percent damper position, using a rotary dial on the actuator, to begin the supply fan sequence. The damper should remain closed while the unit is off, with or without power.

#### No Damper (100 Percent Return Air)

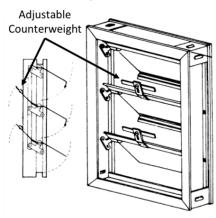
No return or outdoor air damper installed and supply fan start-up sequence begins immediately.

# **Exhaust Dampers**

## **Barometric Relief Exhaust Dampers**

Barometric relief dampers are weighted backdraft dampers with a counterweight that requires a small amount of back pressure before the dampers are opened. The counterweights are adjustable such that the pressure required to open them can be set for site requirements. When the exhaust fan is operating (if installed), the backdraft dampers open automatically as the fan speed increases.

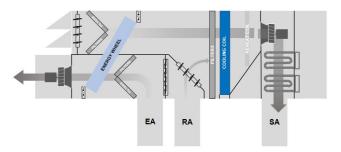
Figure 2. Barometric relief damper with counter weight



# Split Return/Exhaust

Units equipped with dual air paths for the return and exhaust will have an additional function of the exhaust fan operation. During all operating conditions, the exhaust fan controls to a pressure differential across the damper between the two air paths to always have air leakage from the return into the exhaust. This ensures the exhaust air stream does not leak into the return air stream. If preferred, the damper between the two air paths can be set to a minimum position to allow a certain amount of return air to be exhausted during normal operation. During economizer mode, the damper between the two paths will open fully, the return air damper will close fully, and all of the air will be exhausted out of the unit.

Figure 3. Split return/exhaust air paths



# **Primary Heaters**

# **Indirect-Fired Gas Heat**

## **Indirect Gas Heater Sequencing**

Primary gas heat typically has a minimum turndown of 5°F to 15°F, depending on heater size and airflow. A resetting deadband is utilized to prevent cycling due to minimum turndown of the modulating heater, but still allows precise control when the heat demand is not between stages and minimum turndown. The deadband ranges from 0.5°F to 2°F for the discharge air setpoint.

Air stratification can occur whenever there is a duct tee immediately after the unit or when the discharge air sensor is installed too closely to the outlet. When there is more than a single stage of heat, the primary heater is split manifold and there are instances where only half the gas heater is ignited, and only half of the air stream is conditioned immediately downstream of the unit.

## Modulating 1-Stage Gas Heat

Heat 1 is enabled whenever the heating capacity primary status is above 0 percent, and the modulating heat output is directly proportional to the heating capacity. Stage 1 heat command is turned off once the heat capacity returns to 0 percent for 3 continuous minutes and has a minimum on time of 5 minutes.

#### Modulating 2-Stage Gas Heat

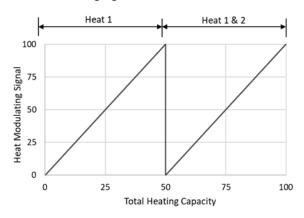
With modulating 2-stage gas heat, there is a single heater with a split manifold, with each stage having 50 percent of the total capacity. The first stage is on one side, and the second stage is on the other side.

Heat 1 is enabled whenever the heating capacity primary status is above 0 percent, and heat 2 is enabled whenever the heating capacity reaches 50 percent. The modulating heat output is scaled from 0 to 100 percent with the heating capacity between 0 to 50 percent and again at 50 to 100 percent, see Figure 4, p. 24.

Heat 1 heat command is turned off once the heat capacity returns to 0 percent for 3 continuous minutes and has a minimum on time of 5 minutes. When starting heat 2, the heat capacity is initially locked at 50 percent to prevent overshooting setpoint.



Figure 4. Modulating heat signal and staging for 2stage gas heat

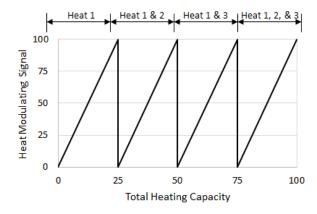


## Modulating 3-Stage Gas Heat

With modulating 3-stage gas heat, heat 1, and 2 are a single, split manifold burner, with each stage being 25 percent of the capacity (totaling 50 percent of the total capacity). Heat 3 is 50 percent of the total capacity and equal to the size of both heat 1 and heat 2. The burners are staged in different orders to achieve the full modulating range.

Heat 1 is enabled whenever the heating capacity is above 0 percent. Heat 2 is enabled when the heating capacity is between 25 to 50 percent and from 75 to 100 percent. Heat 3 is enabled when the heating capacity is above 50 percent. The modulating heat signal is scaled 0 to 100 percent between each of the stages, see Figure 5, p. 24. Each time a burner is staged off/on, the PID is locked to prevent overshooting the setpoint.

Figure 5. Modulating heat signal and staging for 3stage gas heat



# **Fans**

#### **Condenser Fans**

The following pictures represent the condenser fan numbering for each Horizon cabinet from the top view. The ones labeled with VFD are the fans that are on a VFD when the unit is

equipped with active head pressure control, while the others are on/off.

Figure 6. Top view of OAB 3 to 9 tons

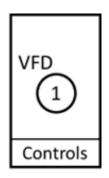


Figure 7. Top view of OADG (rev 6) 10 to 20 tons standard DX; and 10 to 15 tons air source heat pump

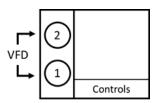


Figure 8. Top view of OADG (rev 6) 25 to 30 tons standard DX; and 17 to 30 tons air source heat pump

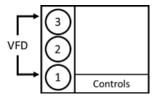


Figure 9. Top view of OAN (rev 5) 30 to 60 tons

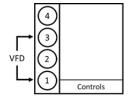


Figure 10. Top view of OANG (rev 6) 40 to 50 tons

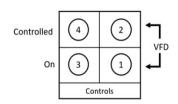
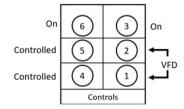


Figure 11. Top View of OANG (rev 6) 55 to 80 tons



# **Filter Status Switches**

Each unit is equipped with up to three filter status switches based on ordered options. These switches are differential pressure measured across the filters that triggers a binary input into the controller.

The final filter status is located on the filter bank just before the indoor cooling coil (or just upstream of the supply fan for no cooling units). When equipped with dual filters (such as Merv-14 and Merv-8) in the same filter bank, the switch measures the pressure drop across both filter sets, and not each individual filter type.

Each unit with an ERV has a filter status switch on the exhaust path (before ERV) and on the outdoor air path, but the outdoor air filter bank is removed on units with pre-heat. The two filter switches are located near the filter banks and are labeled Energy Recovery Wheel Outdoor and Exhaust Air Filter Status.

## Condensate Overflow Switch

The optional Condensate Overflow Switch protects condensate collection to the point it overflows the drain pan causing potential damage to the unit, ductwork, and building. The overflow switch is located at the sloped end of the drain pan towards the condensate drain connection and will not function properly if the unit is not installed level.

# **Airflow Monitoring**

# **Supply Airflow Monitoring**

When equipped with airflow monitoring on the supply fan(s), the airflow is measured using a piezo reading on the cone of the supply fan and should not be confused with a static pressure reading. Each unit has a local and global airflow reading, with the local value being critical for unit operation, and the global value having an available k-factor to align the unit with BAS readings for VAV or other purposes.

Piezo pressure is measured with supply fan piezo pressure local, and a multiplier is applied using the supply fan wheel size to generate a supply fan airflow local. The local value is used within the program as a safety measure. To utilize the supply airflow reading for fan control, see "Supply Fan Operation," p. 117.

The supply airflow active is calculated by multiplying the supply fan airflow local by the supply fan airflow k-factor. The k-factor should be the only adjusted value.

# **Exhaust Airflow Monitoring**

When equipped with airflow monitoring on the exhaust fan(s), the airflow is measured using a piezo reading on the cone of the exhaust fan and should not be confused with a static pressure reading. Each unit has a local and global airflow reading, with the local value being critical for unit operation. and the global value having an available k-factor to align the unit with BAS readings for VAVs or other purposes.

Piezo pressure is measured with exhaust fan piezo pressure local, and a multiplier is applied using the exhaust fan wheel size to generate an exhaust fan airflow local. The local value is used within the program as a safety measure. To utilize the exhaust airflow reading for fan control, see "Exhaust Fan Operation," p. 121.

The exhaust airflow active is calculated by multiplying the exhaust fan airflow local by the exhaust fan airflow k-factor. The k-factor should be the only adjusted value.

# **Outdoor Airflow Monitoring**

Outdoor airflow is measured using averaging probes mounted in front of the outdoor air damper, measuring velocity pressure. The pressure measurement is fed back into the controller to calculate an airflow reading.

Units equipped with outdoor airflow monitoring and modulating dampers have the capability to control the dampers to an airflow setpoint. To set the unit up for outdoor airflow control using the outdoor air dampers, set the outdoor airflow setpoint to the requested value. The unit will modulate the outdoor air damper position command to maintain the outdoor airflow active to the setpoint. Damper position is restricted between the outdoor air damper minimum position setpoint and outdoor air damper maximum position setpoint.

On VAV units, the supply airflow minimum setpoint active is limited to not fall below the outdoor air minimum flow setpoint. so that the minimum amount of outdoor air is sustained.

Note on Accuracy: The airflow measurement device is designed for 0 to 100 percent of the full range of each cabinet. As such, it is not possible to design a measurement device that works across the wide ranges of operating conditions.

At full flow, the readings are accurate within ±5 percent, but measurement accuracy falls off at low outdoor airflow ranges. At about 25 percent of the full cabinet airflow, accuracy may fall to ±10 percent, and continues to decline from there.

For example, the OAB has a range up to 3,000 cfm. At 200 cfm of outside air, the accuracy may only be 20 percent.

# **Power Phase Monitor**

Factory installed power phase monitors (PHM) monitor incoming power and shutdown the equipment whenever the power falls outside of acceptable ranges to prevent damage to 3-phase equipment. The four protections that the phase monitors provide are: Overvoltage (10%), Undervoltage (10%), Phase unbalance (3%), and incorrect phasing. All operation is immediately shutdown once the PHM indicates an alarm. Once the power is restored to normal ranges, the PHM



#### **General Information**

will auto-reset to allow the unit to return to normal operation. The reset time is factory set at 30 seconds.

A PHM trip will activate the emergency stop circuit, and on the main unit controller two alarms will be displayed: Phase Monitor Status Local and Emergency Stop. This indicates that the phase monitor tripped, while just an Emergency Stop alarm indicates that another device in the emergency stop circuit tripped.

Figure 12. Macromatic phase status indicators



|     | LED STATUS | STATUS                     |
|-----|------------|----------------------------|
| GR  |            | NORMAL<br>(RELAY ON)       |
| EEN | MMMMM.     | RESTART<br>(DELAY)         |
| Г   |            | REVERSAL                   |
| R   |            | LOSS/UB<br>(UNBALANCE)     |
| D   |            | LOW VOLT<br>(UNDERVOLTAGE) |
|     |            | HIGH VOLT<br>(OVERVOLTAGE) |

Figure 13. Time mark phase status indicators



**LED STATUS** 

|   | ON CONTINUOUSLY | UNDER             |
|---|-----------------|-------------------|
| Ŗ |                 | OVER              |
| 5 | 5               | UNBAL / SINGLE PH |
|   |                 | REVERSE PHASE     |
| Ģ | ON CONTINUOUSLY | RUN               |
| N |                 | RESTART DELAY     |

# **Main Unit Display (Optional)**

If selected with a display, a 7-inch color touchscreen display will be included. The Tracer® TD-7 human interface allows for monitoring, setting, editing, and controlling the unit. The display can be mounted at the unit within the controls cabinet or remotely for ease of controls access without being at the unit. The TD-7 display is powered by 24 Vac, either connected to the unit Tracer UC600 output or alternate power source. An ethernet cable will provide communication between the Tracer UC600 and Tracer TD-7 display. The display is backlit enabling better viewing even with poor lighting conditions or if installed outdoors (exception of direct sunlight). For full functionality details, see *Tracer® TD-7 Display for the Tracer UC600 Programmable Controller - Installation, Operation, and Maintenance* (BAS-SVX50\*-EN).

**Note:** When using BACnet IP connection, the unit cannot also be equipped with a Tracer TD-7 Display as they both require the use of the same UC600 port.

# **Emergency Stop Circuit**

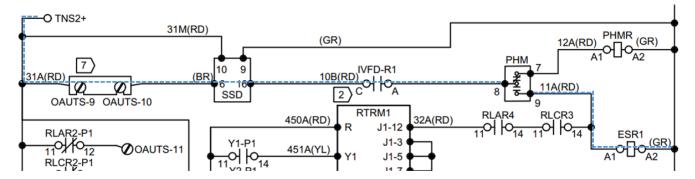
The emergency stop circuit is a hardwired circuit that, when tripped, immediately shuts the entire unit down to prevent damage to the equipment or the building. Multiple devices may be factory installed in this circuit depending on ordered options. All devices external to the unit should be wired to field wiring terminal strip OAUTS-9 and OAUTS-10 by removing the jumper and landing the wires on these terminals. Refer to line 76 on the unit electrical wiring diagram to determine which devices are installed on the emergency stop circuit.

Table 1. Emergency stop circuit

| Device                                       | Acronym         | Manual or<br>Auto-Reset |
|--|-----------------|-------------------------|
| External Interlock (Field Installed Devices) | OAUSTS-9 and 10 | _                       |
| Supply Smoke Detector                        | SSD             | Manual                  |
| Return Smoke Detector                        | RSD             | Manual                  |
| Freezestat                                   | FRZ             | Auto                    |
| Supply Fan VFD Safety<br>Circuit             | IVFD-R1         | Manual                  |
| Power Phase Monitor                          | PHM             | Auto                    |

Figure 14 shows a typical emergency stop circuit (blue dotted line). 24 Vac from the transformer (TNS2) is wired through each device and used to energize the emergency stop relays (ESR1, ESR2, etc.). These emergency stop relays (ESR#) are used throughout the unit to provide a hard shutdown. The power phase monitor has a dedicated alarm input into the main unit controller. If the alarm log displays both an emergency stop and a phase monitor fault, the issue is related to the incoming power. If the alarm log shows an emergency stop only, it is one of the other devices on the emergency stop circuit.

Figure 14. Emergency stop circuit schematic



# **Unit Inspection**

# **AWARNING**

# Fiberglass Wool!

Product may contain fiberglass wool. Disturbing the insulation in this product during installation, maintenance or repair will expose you to airborne particles of glass wool fibers and ceramic fibers known to the state of California to cause cancer through inhalation. Glass wool fibers may also cause respiratory, skin or eye irritation.

#### AAVERTISSEMENT

#### Laine de verre!

Le produit peut contenir de la laine de verre. Des interventions inappropriées sur l'isolation de ce produit pendant les opérations d'installation, d'entretien ou de réparation vous exposent à des particules aériennes de fibres de verre ou de fibres céramiques, responsables selon la législation américaine (état de Californie) de risques de cancers par inhalation. Les fibres de verre peuvent aussi provoquer des phénomènes d'irritation au niveau du système respiratoire, de la peau ou des yeux.

As soon as the unit arrives at the job site:

- □ Verify that the nameplate data matches the data on the sales order and bill of lading (including electrical data).
- ☐ Verify that the power supply complies with the unit nameplate specifications.
- Visually inspect the exterior of the unit, including the roof, for signs of shipping damage.
- ☐ Visually inspect the internal components for shipping damage as soon as possible after delivery and before it is stored. Do not walk on the sheet metal base pans.
- ☐ If concealed damage is discovered, notify the carriers terminal of damage immediately by phone and by mail. Concealed damage must be reported within 15 days.

- ☐ Request an immediate joint inspection of the damage by the carrier and the consignee. Do not remove damaged material from the receiving location. Take photos of the damage, if possible. The owner must provide reasonable evidence that the damage did not occur after delivery.
- ☐ Notify the appropriate sales representative before installing or repairing a damaged unit.
- Avoid breathing fiberglass dust.
- Use a NIOSH approved dust/mist respirator.
- Avoid contact with the skin or eyes. Wear long-sleeved, loose-fitting clothing, gloves, and eye protection.
- Wash clothes separately from other clothing: rinse washer thoroughly.
- Operations such as sawing, blowing, tear-out, and spraying may generate fiber concentrations requiring additional respiratory protection. Use the appropriate NIOSH approved respiration in these situations.

#### **First Aid Measures**

#### **Eye Contact**

Flush eyes with water to remove dust. If symptoms persist, seek medical attention.

#### **Skin Contact**

Wash affected areas gently with soap and warm water after handling.

#### Storage

Unit should be stored in a manner that prevents mechanical damage from occurring. Store unit in a level and dry location. If the unit is not level or adequately supported, damage can occur.

Take precautions to prevent condensate from forming inside the units electrical compartments and motors if:

- · The unit is stored before it is installed; or,
- The unit is set on the roof curb, and temporary heat is provided in the building.



#### **General Information**

Isolate all side panel service entrances and base pan openings (e.g., conduit holes, S/A and R/A openings, and flue openings) from the ambient air until the unit is ready for start-up.

**Note:** Do not use the units heater for temporary heat without first completing the start-up procedure detailed in "Start-Up," p. 90.

The manufacturer will not assume any responsibility for equipment damage resulting from condensate accumulation on the units electrical and/or mechanical components.

#### **Unit Clearances**

"Unit Clearances, Curb Dimensions, and Dimensional Data," p. 38 contains figures that illustrate the minimum operating and service clearances for either a single or multiple unit installation. These clearances are the minimum distances necessary to assure adequate serviceability, cataloged unit capacity, and peak operating efficiency.

Providing less than the recommended clearances may result in condenser coil starvation, short-circuiting of exhaust or recirculation of hot condenser air.



# **A2L Information**

## **A2L Work Procedures**

#### **AWARNING**

# Risk of Fire — Flammable Refrigerant!

Failure to follow instructions below could result in death or serious injury, and equipment damage.

- To be repaired only by trained service personnel.
- Do not puncture refrigerant tubing.
- Dispose of properly in accordance with federal or local regulations.

## **AWARNING**

# Refrigerant under High Pressure!

Failure to follow instructions below could result in an explosion which could result in death or serious injury or equipment damage.

System contains refrigerant under high pressure. Recover refrigerant to relieve pressure before opening the system. See unit nameplate for refrigerant type. Do not use non-approved refrigerants, refrigerant substitutes, or refrigerant additives.

#### **AWARNING**

## **Hazardous Voltage!**

Failure to disconnect power before servicing could result in death or serious injury.

Disconnect all electric power, including remote disconnects before servicing. Follow proper lockout/ tagout procedures to ensure the power can not be inadvertently energized. Verify that no power is present with a voltmeter.

#### **AWARNING**

#### Ignition Sources in Ductwork!

Failure to follow instructions below could result in death or serious injury.

For appliances using A2L refrigerants connected via an air duct system to one or more rooms, only auxiliary devices declared suitable with the refrigerant shall be installed in connecting ductwork.

The units described in this manual use R-454B refrigerant. Use ONLY R-454B rated service equipment or components with these units. For specific handling concerns with R-454B, contact your local Trane representative.

Installation, repair, removal, or disposal should be performed by trained service personnel.

At all times, Trane's maintenance and service guidelines shall be followed. If in doubt, contact Trane technical support for assistance.

#### Servicing

Prior to initiating work on equipment, check the area with an appropriate refrigerant detector. Ensure the service personnel are properly trained regarding work in potentially toxic or flammable atmospheres. Ensure that the leak detection equipment being used is suitable for use with all applicable refrigerants, i.e. non-sparking, adequately sealed, or intrinsically safe. Be aware that the refrigerant does not contain an odor

If any hot work is to be conducted on the refrigerating equipment or any associated parts, appropriate fire extinguishing equipment shall be available on hand. A dry powder or CO<sub>2</sub> fire extinguisher should be located adjacent to the charging area.

At all times, Trane's maintenance and service guidelines shall be followed. If in doubt, contact Trane technical support for assistance.

All maintenance staff and others working in the local area shall be instructed on the nature of the work being carried out. Work in confined spaces shall be avoided.

# **Ignition Source Mitigation**

Do not use any sources of ignition when working on the refrigeration system.

Keep all ignition sources, including cigarette smoking, away from the site of installation, repair, removal or disposal, during which refrigerant can potentially be released to the surrounding space.

Survey the area around the equipment before initiating work to ensure no flammable hazards or ignition risks are present.

"No Smoking" signs shall be displayed.

Do not use devices that can be a source of ignition to accelerate defrosting of components. Use only defrost and cleaning procedures recommended by Trane. Do not pierce or burn.

#### Ventilation

Ensure that the area is in the open or that it is adequately ventilated before breaking into the system or conducting any hot work. A degree of ventilation shall continue during the period that the work is carried out. The ventilation should safely disperse any released refrigerant and preferably expel it externally into the atmosphere. If present, check that the ventilation system, including outlets, are operating adequately and are not obstructed.

#### Refrigerating Equipment

Refrigerant piping or components should not be installed in locations where substances which may corrode them are present.



#### **A2L Information**

Check that equipment hazard markings are visible and legible. Replace them if they are not.

For equipment using secondary fluids, like water or glycol, check that refrigerant is not present in the secondary fluid loop before conducting any hot work.

#### **Electrical Devices**

Do not apply power to the circuit if a fault exists which compromises safety. If the fault cannot be corrected immediately, but it is necessary to continue operation, an adequate temporary solution shall be used. This shall be reported to the owner of the equipment, so all parties are advised.

Initial safety checks shall include:

- Cabling is not subject to wear, corrosion, excessive pressure, vibration, sharp edges, or any other adverse environmental effects. Account for the effects of aging or continual vibration from sources such as compressors or fans
- Capacitors are discharged. This shall be done in a safe manner to avoid possibility of sparking.
- No live electrical components and wiring are exposed while charging, recovering, or purging the system.
- · Verify continuity of earth bonding.
- Replace electrical components with Trane replacement parts, or those meeting the same ratings and qualified for flame arrest protection, UL LZGH2 category.

#### **Leak Detection**

Never use an open flame to detect leaks. A halide torch should not be used. Use only approved leak detection methods per this instruction manual.

The following leak detection methods are deemed acceptable for all refrigerant systems.

Electronic leak detectors may be used to detect refrigerant leaks but, in the case of flammable refrigerants, the sensitivity may not be adequate, or may need re-calibration. (Detection equipment shall be calibrated in a refrigerant-free area.) Ensure that the detector is not a potential source of ignition and is suitable for the refrigerant used. Leak detection equipment shall be set at a percentage of the LFL gas (25% maximum) is confirmed.

Leak detection fluids are also suitable for use with most refrigerants but the use of detergents containing chlorine shall be avoided as the chlorine may react with the refrigerant and corrode the copper pipe-work.

Examples of leak detection fluids are:

- Bubble method
- Fluorescent method agents

If a leak is suspected, all naked flames shall be removed/ extinguished.

If a refrigerant leak is found which requires brazing, all refrigerant shall be recovered from the system, or isolated (by

means of shut off valves) in a part of the system remote from the leak.

#### **Refrigerant Removal and Evacuation**

When breaking into the refrigerant circuit to make repairs –or for any other purpose – conventional procedures shall be used. However, for flammable refrigerants it is important that best practice be followed, since flammability is a consideration.

The following procedure shall be adhered to:

- Safely remove refrigerant following local and national regulations.
  - a. Confirm the correct number of cylinders for holding the total system charge is available.
  - Cylinders shall be complete with pressure-relief valve and associated shut-off valves in good working order.
  - Empty recovery cylinders are evacuated and, if possible, cooled before recovery occurs.
- 2. Evacuate.
- 3. Purge the circuit with inert gas.
- 4. Evacuate (optional for A2L).
- Continuously flush or purge with inert gas when using flame to open circuit.
- 6. Open the circuit.

Prior to refrigerant removal, open all appropriate valves, including solenoid and electronic expansion valves (EXVs). Use control settings, where available. When not available, manually open all electronically controlled valves using acceptable service procedures.

The recovery equipment shall be in good working order with instructions available. Equipment shall be suitable for the recovery of the flammable refrigerant. For specific handling concerns, contact the manufacturer. Ensure all hose connections are checked for tightness to avoid refrigerant leaks.

The refrigerant shall be recovered into the correct recovery cylinders if venting is not allowed by local and national codes. Do not mix refrigerants in recovery unit and especially not in cylinders.

Refrigerant recovery unit should be purged with an inert gas after each use or before using with a different refrigerant Class – for example, A2L to A1.

If compressors or compressor oils are to be removed, ensure that they have been evacuated to an acceptable level to make certain that flammable refrigerant does not remain within the lubricant. The compressor body shall not be heated by an open flame or other ignition sources to accelerate this process. When oil is drained from a system, it shall be carried out safely.

The system shall be purged with oxygen-free nitrogen to render the appliance safe for flammable refrigerants. This process might need to be repeated several times. Compressed air or oxygen shall not be used for purging refrigerant systems.

The system shall be vented down to atmospheric pressure to enable work to take place.

The outlet for the vacuum pump shall not be close to any potential ignition sources, and ventilation shall be available.

## Refrigerant Charging

In addition to conventional charging procedures, the following requirements shall be followed.

- Ensure that contamination of different refrigerants does not occur when using charging equipment.
- Hoses or lines shall be as short as possible to minimize the amount of refrigerant contained in them.
- Cylinders shall be kept in an appropriate position according to the instructions.
- Ensure that the refrigerating system is earthed prior to charging the system with refrigerant.
- Label the system when charging is complete (if not already).
- Extreme care shall be taken not to overfill the refrigerating system.

Prior to recharging the system, it shall be pressure-tested with the appropriate purging gas. The system shall be leak-tested on completion of charging but prior to commissioning. A follow up leak test shall be carried out prior to leaving the site.

Prior to refrigerant charging, open all appropriate valves, including solenoid and electronic expansion valves (EXVs). Use control settings, where available. When not available, manually open all electronically controlled valves using acceptable service procedures.

#### **Decommissioning**

Before carrying out the decommissioning procedure, it is essential that the trained service personnel is completely familiar with the equipment and all its details. It is recommended good practice that all refrigerants are recovered safely. Prior to the task being carried out, an oil and refrigerant sample shall be taken in case analysis is required prior to reuse of recovered refrigerant. It is essential that electrical power is available before the task is commenced.

- 1. Become familiar with the equipment and its operation.
- 2. Isolate system electrically.
- 3. Before attempting the procedure, ensure that:
  - a. Mechanical handling equipment is available, if required, for handling refrigerant cylinders.
  - All personal protective equipment is available and being used correctly.
  - c. The recovery process is supervised at all times by a competent person.
  - d. Recovery equipment and cylinders conform to the appropriate standards.
- 4. Pump down refrigerant system, if possible.

- If a vacuum is not possible, make a manifold so that refrigerant can be removed from various parts of the system.
- Make sure that cylinder is situated on the scales before recovery takes place.
- Start the recovery machine and operate in accordance with instructions.
- Do not overfill cylinders (no more than 80% volume liquid charge).
- Do not exceed the maximum working pressure of the cylinder, even temporarily.
- 10. When the cylinders have been filled correctly and the process completed, make sure that the cylinders and the equipment are removed from site promptly and all isolation valves on the equipment are closed off.
- 11. Recovered refrigerant shall not be charged into another refrigerating system unless it has been cleaned and checked. When equipment has been decommissioned, attach a signed label which includes the date of decommissioning.
- 12. When equipment has been decommissioned, attach a signed label which includes the date of decommissioning.

#### General

Store the equipment in a room without continuously operating ignition sources (for example: open flames, an operating gas appliance or an operating electric heater).

Horizon OAU units all have a refrigerant detection system installed, thus false ceilings or drop ceilings may be used as a return air plenum as long as any external connections are also provided with a sensor immediately below the return air plenum duct joint.

Confirm that there are labels present on the equipment stating the equipment contains FLAMMABLE REFRIGERANT.

# **A2L Application Considerations**

This product is listed to UL standard 60335-2-40, Household and Similar Electrical Appliances – Safety –Part 2-40: Particular Requirements for Electrical Heat Pumps, Air-Conditioners and Dehumidifiers, which defines safe design and use strategies for equipment using A2L refrigerants. This standard limits the refrigerant concentration in a space in the event of a refrigerant leak. To meet the requirements, the UL standard defines minimum room area, refrigerant charge limit, minimum circulation airflow and/or ventilation airflow requirements, and limits the use of ignition sources in spaces. The standard may require a unit refrigerant leak detection system.

For equipment with R-454B and charge amounts less than or equal to 3.91 lbs per circuit, this UL standard does not prescribe a room area limit and does not require a refrigerant leak detection system or any circulation airflow or ventilation airflow mitigation strategies.



#### **A2L Information**

Depending on the application, a specific requirement of ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 15, Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems, could be more stringent than UL 60335-2-40 requirements. See Refrigeration Systems and Machinery Rooms Application Considerations for Compliance with ASHRAE® Standard 15-2022 Application Engineering Manual (APP-APM001\*-EN) for more information.

## **Ignition Sources in Ductwork**

Do not install open flames in the ductwork. Hot surfaces exceeding 700°C (1290°F) should not be installed in the ductwork unless the average airflow velocity is not less than 1.0 m\s (200 ft\min) across the heater and proof of airflow is verified before system is energized.

Electric heaters can exceed the surface temperature limit if airflow distribution is poor, or insufficient airflow is provided over the heater.

Surface temperatures of most gas heaters do not exceed the surface temperature limits due to ANSI construction requirements.

# **Ignition Sources in Unit**

This UL-listed unit does not contain any ignition sources. All potential ignition sources, (including factory or field installed accessory electric heaters, gas heaters, relays, and contactors) were evaluated during product UL listing.

# Minimum Room Area Limits (Refrigerant charge greater than 3.91 lb per circuit)

Equipment with R–454B charge amounts greater than 3.91 lb per circuit may require additional circulation or ventilation airflow mitigation strategies. In this case, two minimum room area ( $A_{min}$ ) thresholds:

- The first threshold defines when equipment serving a single room is required to provide circulation airflow, either continuous or activated by a leak detection system. A ducted system requires circulation airflow unless the smallest room it serves is larger than the adjusted A<sub>min</sub> threshold. This product contains a leak detection system if a circuit charge is greater than 3.91 lbs. As a result, no further leak detection system evaluation is required.
- The second threshold defines when additional ventilation airflow is required. If the room area, A or TA, is below the adjusted A<sub>min</sub> or TA<sub>min</sub> threshold, additional ventilation is required to remove refrigerant in the event of a leak. Refer to UL 60335-2-40 Clause GG.8 and ANSI\ASHRAE Standard 15 Section 7 for natural and mechanical ventilation requirements.

**Note:** Only water source heat pump units are approved for optional indoor installation/storage. Unit specific Amin is noted on the equipment nameplate.

Table 2. Minimum room area by model

|         |             |         | Minimum Room Area <sup>(a)</sup><br>Minimum Circulation Airflow <sup>(b)</sup> |                        |                     |                        |                     |                        |  |  |
|---------|-------------|---------|--|------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|--|--|
| Model D | Description | Tonnage | DX   |                        | AS                  | HP                     | WSHP                |                        |  |  |
|         | 36          | 3       | 165 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 15 m <sup>2</sup>      | 207 ft <sup>2</sup> | 19 m <sup>2</sup>      | 180 ft2             | 17 m <sup>2</sup>      |  |  |
|         | 36          | 3       | 298 CFM  | 506 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 373 CFM             | 634 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 338CFM              | 575 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |  |  |
|         | 48          | 4       | 165 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 15 m <sup>2</sup>      | 207 ft <sup>2</sup> | 19 m <sup>2</sup>      | 189 ft <sup>2</sup> | 18 m <sup>2</sup>      |  |  |
|         | 48          | 4       | 298 CFM  | 506 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 373 CFM             | 634 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 341 CFM             | 579 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |  |  |
|         | 00          | 5       | 159 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 15 m <sup>2</sup>      | 222 ft <sup>2</sup> | 21 m <sup>2</sup>      | 189 ft <sup>2</sup> | 18 m <sup>2</sup>      |  |  |
|         | 60          |         | 287 CFM  | 487 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 400 CFM             | 680 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 344 CFM             | 579 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |  |  |
| å       | 70          |         | 197 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 18 m <sup>2</sup>      | 314 ft <sup>2</sup> | 29 m <sup>2</sup>      | 191 ft <sup>2</sup> | 18 m <sup>2</sup>      |  |  |
| OAB*    | 72          | 6       | 354 CFM  | 602 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 566 CFM             | 961 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 344 CFM             | 584 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |  |  |
|         | 84          | 7       | 238 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 22 m <sup>2</sup>      | 310 ft <sup>2</sup> | 29 m <sup>2</sup>      | 219 ft <sup>2</sup> | 20 m <sup>2</sup>      |  |  |
|         |             |         | 428 CFM  | 726 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 557 CFM             | 947 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 395 CFM             | 671 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |  |  |
|         | 00          |         | 250 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 23 m <sup>2</sup>      | 325 ft <sup>2</sup> | 30 m <sup>2</sup>      | 219 ft <sup>2</sup> | 20 m <sup>2</sup>      |  |  |
|         | 96          | 8       | 449 CFM  | 763 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 584 CFM             | 993 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 395 CFM             | 671 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |  |  |
|         | 108         | 9       | 248 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 23 m <sup>2</sup>      | 320 ft <sup>2</sup> | 30 m <sup>2</sup>      | 219 ft <sup>2</sup> | 20 m <sup>2</sup>      |  |  |
|         | 108         | 9       | 446 CFM  | 759 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 576 CFM             | 979 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 395 CFM             | 671 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |  |  |

Table 2. Minimum room area by model

|         |             |                             |                      |                         | Minimum R<br>Minimum Circu | oom Area <sup>(a)</sup><br>lation Airflow <sup>(b)</sup> |                     |                         |  |
|---------|-------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|--|---------------------|-------------------------|--|
| Model D | Description | Tonnage                     | D                    | X                       | AS                         |  | ws                  | SHP                     |  |
|         | 10          | 10                          | 455 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 42 m <sup>2</sup>       | 499 ft <sup>2</sup>        | 46 m <sup>2</sup>  | 299 ft <sup>2</sup> | 28 m <sup>2</sup>       |  |
|         |             | .0                          | 820 CFM              | 1393 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 898 CFM                    | 1526 m <sup>3</sup> /hr                                  | 538 CFM             | 915 m <sup>3</sup> /hr  |  |
|         | 12          | 12                          | 445 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 41 m <sup>2</sup>       | 490 ft <sup>2</sup>        | 45 m <sup>2</sup>  | 299 ft <sup>2</sup> | 28 m <sup>2</sup>       |  |
|         |             |                             | 801 CFM              | 1361 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 882 CFM                    | 1499 m <sup>3</sup> /hr                                  | 538 CFM             | 915 m <sup>3</sup> /hr  |  |
|         | 15          | 15                          | 427 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 40 m <sup>2</sup>       | 595 ft <sup>2</sup>        | 55 m <sup>2</sup>  | 292 ft <sup>2</sup> | 27 m <sup>2</sup>       |  |
|         |             | -                           | 768 CFM              | 1306 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 1072 CFM                   | 1820 m <sup>3</sup> /hr                                  | 525 CFM             | 892 m <sup>3</sup> /hr  |  |
| OADG    | 17          | 17                          | 490 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 45 m <sup>2</sup>       | 691 ft <sup>2</sup>        | 64 m <sup>2</sup>  | 477 ft <sup>2</sup> | 44 m <sup>2</sup>       |  |
| õ       |             |                             | 882 CFM              | 1499 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 1245 CFM                   | 2115 m <sup>3</sup> /hr                                  | 858 CFM             | 1457 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |  |
|         | 20          | 20                          | 493 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 46 m <sup>2</sup>       | 693 ft <sup>2</sup>        | 64 m <sup>2</sup>  | 472 ft <sup>2</sup> | 44 m <sup>2</sup>       |  |
|         |             |                             | 888 CFM              | 1508 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 1247 CFM                   | 2119 m <sup>3</sup> /hr                                  | 850 CFM             | 1444 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |  |
|         | 25          | 25                          | 786 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 73 m <sup>2</sup>       | 982 ft <sup>2</sup>        | 91 m <sup>2</sup><br>3002 m <sup>3</sup> /hr             |                     |                         |  |
|         |             |                             | 1415 CFM             | 2404 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 1767 CFM                   | 3002 M°/M  | N                   | I/A                     |  |
|         | 30          | 30                          | 762 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 71 m <sup>2</sup>       | 953 ft <sup>2</sup>        | 88 m <sup>2</sup><br>2915 m <sup>3</sup> /hr             |                     |                         |  |
|         |             |                             | 1372 CFM             | 2331 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 1715 CFM                   |  |                     |                         |  |
|         | 360         | 30                          | 716 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 66 m <sup>2</sup>       | 713 ft <sup>2</sup>        | 66 m <sup>2</sup>  | 416 ft <sup>2</sup> | 39 m <sup>2</sup>       |  |
|         |             |                             | 1288 CFM             | 2188 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 1283 CFM                   | 2179 m <sup>3</sup> /hr                                  | 450 CFM             | 1273 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |  |
|         | 420         | 35                          | 710 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 66 m <sup>2</sup>       | 700 ft <sup>2</sup>        | 65 m <sup>2</sup>  | 483 ft <sup>2</sup> | 45 m <sup>2</sup>       |  |
|         | 120         |                             | 1277 CFM             | 2170 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 1261 CFM                   | 2142 m <sup>3</sup> /hr                                  | 869 CFM             | 1476 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |  |
|         | 480         | 40                          | 705 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 65 m <sup>2</sup>       | 708 ft <sup>2</sup>        | 66 m <sup>2</sup>  | 480 ft <sup>2</sup> | 44 m <sup>2</sup>       |  |
|         | 400         | 40                          | 1269 CFM             | 2156 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 1274 CFM                   | 2165 m <sup>3</sup> /hr                                  | 863 CFM             | 1467 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |  |
| *       | 540         | 45                          | 770 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 71 m <sup>2</sup>       | 697 ft <sup>2</sup>        | 65 m <sup>2</sup>  | 487 ft <sup>2</sup> | 45 m <sup>2</sup>       |  |
| OAN*    | 540         | 45                          | 1385 CFM             | 2354 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 1256 CFM                   | 2133 m <sup>3</sup> /hr                                  | 877 CFM             | 1489 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |  |
|         | 600         | 50                          | 918 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 85 m <sup>2</sup>       | 949 ft <sup>2</sup>        | 88 m <sup>2</sup>  | 486 ft <sup>2</sup> | 45 m <sup>2</sup>       |  |
|         |             |                             | 1653 CFM             | 2809 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 1707 CFM                   | 2901 m <sup>3</sup> /hr                                  | 874 CFM             | 1489 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |  |
|         |             | 648     54       720     60 | 909 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 84 m <sup>2</sup>       | 938 ft <sup>2</sup>        | 87 m <sup>2</sup>  | 502 ft <sup>2</sup> | 47 m <sup>2</sup>       |  |
|         | 648         |                             | 1637 CFM             | 2781 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | 1688 CFM                   | 2869 m <sup>3</sup> /hr                                  | 904 CFM             | 1535 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |  |
|         |             |                             | 900 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 83 m <sup>2</sup>       |                            |  |                     |                         |  |
|         | 720         |                             | 1621 CFM             | 2754 m <sup>3</sup> /hr | N/A                        |  |                     |                         |  |
|         |             |                             | 899 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 83 m <sup>2</sup>       |                            |  |                     |                         |  |
|         | 40          | 40                          | 1618 CFM             | 2749 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |                            |  |                     |                         |  |
|         |             |                             | 875 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 81 m <sup>2</sup>       |                            |  |                     |                         |  |
|         | 45          | 45                          | 1575 CFM             | 2676 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |                            |  |                     |                         |  |
|         |             |                             | 878 ft <sup>2</sup>  | 81 m <sup>2</sup>       |                            |  |                     |                         |  |
|         | 50          | 50                          | 1580 CFM             | 2685 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |                            |  |                     |                         |  |
| g       |             |                             | 1154 ft <sup>2</sup> | 107 m <sup>2</sup>      | -                          |  |                     |                         |  |
| OANG    | 55          | 55                          | 2078 CFM             | 3531 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |                            | N/   | Ά                   |                         |  |
| J       |             |                             | 1139 ft <sup>2</sup> | 106 m <sup>2</sup>      |                            |  |                     |                         |  |
|         | 60          | 60                          | 2051 CFM             | 3485 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |                            |  |                     |                         |  |
|         |             |                             | 1147 ft <sup>2</sup> | 106 m <sup>2</sup>      |                            |  |                     |                         |  |
|         | 70          | 70                          | 2065 CFM             | 3485 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |                            |  |                     |                         |  |
|         | 80          |                             | 1139 ft <sup>2</sup> | 106 m <sup>2</sup>      |                            |  |                     |                         |  |
|         |             | 80                          | 2051 CFM             | 3485 m <sup>3</sup> /hr |                            |  |                     |                         |  |

<sup>(</sup>a) Minimum area is based on 2.2 meter release height and maximum (single circuit) refrigerant charge.(b) Minimum circulation airflow is based on refrigerant, actual unit design minimum airflow may be higher.

#### **A2L Information**

Table 3. Maximum single circuit refrigerant charge

|         |            |         | Maximum Single Circuit Refrigerant Charge, lb (kg) |                    |                    |  |  |  |
|---------|------------|---------|--|--------------------|--------------------|--|--|--|
| Model D | escription | Tonnage | DX   | ASHP               | WSHP               |  |  |  |
| 36      |            | 3       | <b>11.0</b> (5.0)                                  | <b>13.8</b> (6.3)  | <b>12.5</b> (5.7)  |  |  |  |
|         | 48         | 4       | <b>11.0</b> (5.0)                                  | <b>13.8</b> (6.3)  | <b>12.6</b> (5.7)  |  |  |  |
|         | 60         | 5       | <b>10.6</b> (4.8)                                  | <b>14.8</b> (6.7)  | <b>12.6</b> (5.7)  |  |  |  |
| OAB*    | 72         | 6       | <b>13.1</b> (5.9)                                  | <b>20.9</b> (9.5)  | <b>12.6</b> (5.7)  |  |  |  |
|         | 84         | 7       | <b>15.8</b> (7.2)                                  | <b>20.6</b> (9.3)  | <b>14.6</b> (6.6)  |  |  |  |
|         | 96         | 8       | <b>16.6</b> (7.5)                                  | <b>21.6</b> (9.8)  | <b>14.6</b> (6.6)  |  |  |  |
|         | 108        | 9       | <b>16.5</b> (7.5)                                  | <b>21.3</b> (9.7)  | <b>14.6</b> (6.6)  |  |  |  |
|         | 10         | 10      | <b>30.3</b> (13.7)                                 | <b>32.2</b> (15.1) | <b>19.9</b> (9.0)  |  |  |  |
|         | 12         | 12      | <b>29.6</b> (13.4)                                 | <b>32.6</b> (14.8) | <b>19.9</b> (9.0)  |  |  |  |
|         | 15         | 15      | <b>28.4</b> (12.9)                                 | <b>39.6</b> (18.0) | <b>19.4</b> (8.8)  |  |  |  |
| OADG    | 17         | 17      | <b>32.6</b> (14.8)                                 | <b>46.0</b> (20.9) | 31.7 (14.4)        |  |  |  |
| O       | 20         | 20      | <b>32.8</b> (14.9)                                 | <b>46.1</b> (20.9) | <b>31.4</b> (14.2) |  |  |  |
|         | 25         | 25      | <b>52.3</b> (23.7)                                 | <b>65.3</b> (29.6) | NI/A               |  |  |  |
|         | 30         | 30      | <b>50.7</b> (23.0)                                 | <b>63.4</b> (28.8) | N/A                |  |  |  |
|         | 360        | 30      | <b>47.6</b> (21.6)                                 | <b>47.4</b> (21.5) | <b>27.7</b> (12.6) |  |  |  |
|         | 420        | 35      | <b>47.2</b> (21.4)                                 | <b>46.6</b> (21.1) | <b>32.1</b> (14.6) |  |  |  |
|         | 480        | 40      | <b>46.9</b> (21.3)                                 | <b>47.1</b> (21.4) | <b>31.9</b> (14.5) |  |  |  |
| OAN*    | 540        | 45      | <b>51.2</b> (23.2)                                 | <b>46.4</b> (21.0) | <b>31.9</b> (14.5) |  |  |  |
|         | 600        | 50      | <b>61.1</b> (27.7)                                 | <b>63.1</b> (28.6) | <b>32.4</b> (14.7) |  |  |  |
|         | 648        | 54      | <b>60.5</b> (27.4)                                 | <b>62.4</b> (28.3) | <b>32.3</b> (14.7) |  |  |  |
|         | 720        | 60      | <b>59.9</b> (27.2)                                 | <b>61.3</b> (27.8) | <b>33.4</b> (15.1) |  |  |  |
|         | 40         | 40      | <b>59.8</b> (27.1)                                 |                    |                    |  |  |  |
|         | 45         | 45      | <b>58.2</b> (26.4)                                 |                    |                    |  |  |  |
| 45      | 50         | 50      | <b>58.4</b> (26.5)                                 |                    |                    |  |  |  |
| OANG    | 55         | 55      | <b>76.8</b> (34.8)                                 | N/A                |                    |  |  |  |
| 0       | 60         | 60      | <b>75.8</b> (34.4)                                 |                    |                    |  |  |  |
|         | 70         | 70      | <b>76.3</b> (34.6)                                 |                    |                    |  |  |  |
|         | 80         | 80      | <b>75.8</b> (34.4)                                 |                    |                    |  |  |  |

**Note:** Values are the maximum refrigerant charge of a single circuit. Reference unit nameplate for unit specific factory charge.

#### **Indoor WSHP Installation**

Per UL60335-2-40 section GG.4DV D1:

The refrigerating circuit is provided with a separate enclosure that does not allow flow from inside the enclosure to the room. The appliance enclosure shall have a ventilation system

that produces airflow from the appliance interior to the outside through an exhaust ventilation duct. Per each fan opening a

duct no more than 10" (25.4cm) in width or height and no less than 7" (17.78cm) in width or height shall be attached to the outside of the fan opening. The duct's total length shall not exceed 12' (3.66m) before reaching an exterior wall opening. The duct shall have no more than two (2) 45° bends or one (1) 90° bend within its total run from cabinet to exterior wall. The negative pressure measurement in the interior of the appliance enclosure shall be 20 Pa or more and the flow rate to the exterior shall be at least Qmin per the Qmin values listed in

Table 4, p. 35. If additional charge is to be added after install do not exceed the maximum allowable single circuit charge amounts listed in Table 5, p. 35.

Table 4. WSHP data

|        |         |     | Indoor WSHP                                  |                                       |   |  |  |  |
|--------|---------|-----|--|---------------------------------------|---|--|--|--|
|        |         |     | Largest Single Circuit<br>Refrigerant Charge | RDS Activated Cabinet Ventilation Fan | Qmin - Minimum Mechanical<br>Ventilation Required |  |  |  |
|        | MODEL   | TON | Charge in Lbs (kg)                           | CFM (m <sup>3</sup> /h)               | CFM (m³/h)  |  |  |  |
|        | OABF036 | 3   | 12.5 (5.7)                                   | 250 (424.8)                           | 78.4 (133.1)                                      |  |  |  |
|        | OABF048 | 4   | 12.6 (5.7)                                   | 250 (424.8)                           | 79 (134.2)  |  |  |  |
|        | OABF060 | 5   | 12.6 (5.7)                                   | 250 (424.8)                           | 79 (134.2)  |  |  |  |
| OABF   | OABF072 | 6   | 12.7 (5.8)                                   | 250 (424.8)                           | 79.6 (135.3)                                      |  |  |  |
|        | OABF084 | 7   | 14.6 (6.6)                                   | 250 (424.8)                           | 91.5 (155.5)                                      |  |  |  |
|        | OABF096 | 8   | 14.6 (6.6)                                   | 250 (424.8)                           | 91.5 (155.5)                                      |  |  |  |
|        | OABF108 | 9   | 14.6 (6.6)                                   | 250 (424.8)                           | 91.5 (155.5)                                      |  |  |  |
|        | OADG010 | 10  | 19.9 (9)                                     | 250 (424.8)                           | 124.8 (212)                                       |  |  |  |
| စ္က    | OADG012 | 12  | 19.9 (9)                                     | 250 (424.8)                           | 124.8 (212)                                       |  |  |  |
| OAD R6 | OADG015 | 15  | 19.4 (8.8)                                   | 250 (424.8)                           | 121.6 (206.6)                                     |  |  |  |
| Õ      | OADG017 | 17  | 31.7 (14.4)                                  | 250 (424.8)                           | 198.7 (337.7)                                     |  |  |  |
|        | OADG020 | 20  | 31.4 (14.2)                                  | 250 (424.8)                           | 196.9 (334.5)                                     |  |  |  |
|        | OANF360 | 30  | 27.7 (12.6)                                  | 500 (849.5)                           | 173.7 (295)                                       |  |  |  |
|        | OANF420 | 35  | 32.1 (14.6)                                  | 500 (849.5)                           | 201.5 (342.3)                                     |  |  |  |
| OANF   | OANF480 | 40  | 31.9 (14.5)                                  | 500 (849.5)                           | 200.3 (340.3)                                     |  |  |  |
| o      | OANF540 | 45  | 32.4 (14.7)                                  | 500 (849.5)                           | 203.5 (345.7)                                     |  |  |  |
|        | OANF600 | 50  | 32.3 (14.7)                                  | 500 (849.5)                           | 202.9 (344.7)                                     |  |  |  |
|        | OANF648 | 54  | 33.4 (15.1)                                  | 500 (849.5)                           | 209.9 (356.5)                                     |  |  |  |

Table 5. WSHP charges

| Indoor WSHP                              |   |  |  |  |  |  |
|--|---|--|--|--|--|--|
| RDS Activated Cabinet<br>Ventilation Fan | Maximum allowable single circuit charge |  |  |  |  |  |
| CFM (m^3/h)                              | Charge in Lbs (kg)                      |  |  |  |  |  |
| 250 (424.8)                              | 39.8 (18)                               |  |  |  |  |  |
| 500 (849.5)                              | 79.5 (36.1)                             |  |  |  |  |  |

Table 6. Altitude adjustment factor

| Lbs (kg) | $A_{min.adj}$ = Nameplate $A_{min}$ x Altitude Adj x Height Adj x $F_{occ}$ |
|----------|---|
|----------|---|

occupancy level it serves.

Multiply the altitude adjustment factor in the table below by A<sub>min</sub> listed on the unit nameplate.

Minimum Room Area (Amin) Adjustments

Use equation below to adjust the minimum room area, as applicable, based on the unit's installation height, altitude, and

| Altitude        | Sea Level | 2001    | 4001    | 6001    | 8001     | 10001    | 12001    | 14001    | Over  |
|-----------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|----------|----------|----------|----------|-------|
| (ft)            | to 2000   | to 4000 | to 6000 | to 8000 | to 10000 | to 12000 | to 14000 | to 15000 | 15000 |
| Amin Adjustment | 1         | 1.05    | 1.11    | 1.17    | 1.24     | 1.32     | 1.41     | 1.51     |       |

In addition,  $A_{min}$  can be adjusted if the unit is installed in a room at a height that is higher than the minimum height shown on the unit. To adjust  $A_{min}$ , multiply by the ratio of the unit minimum release height (in meters) / actual release height (in meters). Use  $0.6\,\mathrm{m}$  in the ratio for unit minimum installation heights less than or equal to  $0.6\,\mathrm{m}$ .

For institutional occupancies, ASHRAE Standard 15 applies an additional adjustment factor  $F_{\text{occ}}$  to the amount of a charge allowed in a space. To calculate the adjusted  $A_{\text{min}}$  for institutional occupancies, multiply the  $A_{\text{min}}$  on the nameplate by two.



#### **A2L Information**

# **EXAMPLE 1: 20 Ton Packaged Rooftop Multi-Zone VAV System Serving an Institutional Occupancy Space**

The packaged unit serves  $7600 \, \text{ft}^2$  of a nursing home located at an attitude of  $4000 \, \text{ft}$ . The unit has two equally charged 10 ton refrigeration circuits. Each circuit has 12 lbs of refrigerant with a minimum room area requirement of 180  $\, \text{ft}^2$  with a 2.2 m release height.

 $TA_{min.adj} = 180 \text{ ft}^2 \times 1.05 \times 2 = 378 \text{ ft}^2$ 

No additional ventilation is required.

# **EXAMPLE 2: 10 Ton Split System Serving a Single Commercial Occupancy Space**

The split system serves a 1500 ft<sup>2</sup> manufacturing space at 5000 ft altitude. The final installed charge of the single circuit 10 ton unit is 20 lb. The unit has an open return with a release height of 1 m and ducted supply air. The unit  $A_{min}$  is 660 ft<sup>2</sup>.

 $A_{min.adj} = 660 \text{ ft}^2 \times 1.11 = 733 \text{ ft}^2$ 

No additional ventilation is required.

# **Determining Room Area (A or TA)**

The room area (A) is the room area enclosed by the projection to the floor of the walls, partitions, and doors of the space that the equipment serves. For ducted systems, total room area (TA) of all rooms connected by ducts, may be used instead of A.

Rooms connected by drop ceilings only are not considered a single room.

Rooms on the same floor of the building, and connected by an open passageway, can be considered part of the same room if the passageway is a permanent opening, extends to the floor and is intended for people to walk through.

Adjacent rooms on the same floor of the building and connected by permanent openings in the walls and/or doors between rooms (including gaps between the wall and the floor), can be considered part of the same room if the openings meet the following criteria.

- · The opening is permanent and cannot be closed.
- Openings extending to the floor, such as door gaps, need to be at least 20mm above the floor covering surface.
- Natural ventilations opening areas must meet the requirements of ANSI/ASHRAE Standard 15-2022, Section 7.2.3.2.

Rooms that are connected by a mechanical ventilation system can be considered a single room area if the mechanical ventilation system meets the requirements of ANSI\ASHRAE Standard 15-2022, Section 7.6.4.

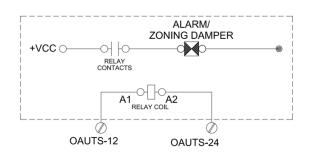
# Refrigeration Detection System (RDS)

The refrigerant detection system consists of one or more refrigerant detection sensors. When the system detects a refrigerant leak, the following mitigation actions will be initiated. Once refrigerant is no longer detected, mitigation will continue for 5 minutes. The 5-minute timer operation is performed by the sensor.

- If a leak is detected in the airstream, energize the supply fan(s) to deliver a required minimum amount of circulation airflow for dilution of refrigerant.
- If a leak is detected in the controls cabinet, the supply fan(s) will be de-energized and mechanical ventilation in the controls cabinet will be energized.
- Disable heater operation.
- Disable compressor operation.
- Provide an output status signal to fully open all zoning dampers, such as VAV boxes or fire dampers. This output status is to be used as a 24VAC trigger for a 24VAC compatible relay coil being utilized for power transmission to audible alarms, visual alarms, and additional mechanical ventilation for units installed indoors. See Figure 121, p. 89 for details on where to land wires for refrigerant detection system mitigation status. See Figure 15, p. 36 for an example schematic on how this status should be used.

Figure 15. Refrigerant Detection System example schematic

# FIELD INSTALLED BY OTHERS



CONNECTION FROM OAUTS BOARD NOT TO EXCEED 250 mA

Important: Only connect a relay coil to this output. Do not source more than 500ma from this circuit.

Building or unit fire and smoke detection systems will override the refrigerant leak detection system operation and will shut the unit down.

If the refrigerant sensor has a fault, is at the end of its life, or is disconnected, the unit will initiate the mitigation actions. If the sensor is determined to be in a fault where the output signal is out of range or at the end of its life, it will require replacement.



Mitigation actions can be verified by disconnecting the sensor. Upon reconnection, the unit will immediately be in normal state and the 5-minute period of continued mitigation will not occur since the timer operation is performed by the sensor.

The refrigerant sensors do not need service. Use only manufacturer approved sensors when replacement is required.

#### **RDS Mechanical Ventilation of Controls Cabinet**

The controls cabinet will have at least one hood assembly for the refrigerant detection system fan exhaust. The location of these hoods is shown in Figure 16, p. 37. The OANG will require minimal fieldwork to open the collapsed hoods, instructions in Figure 17, p. 37.



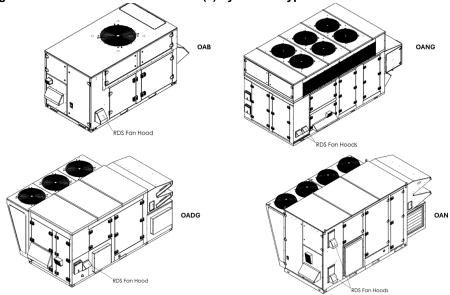
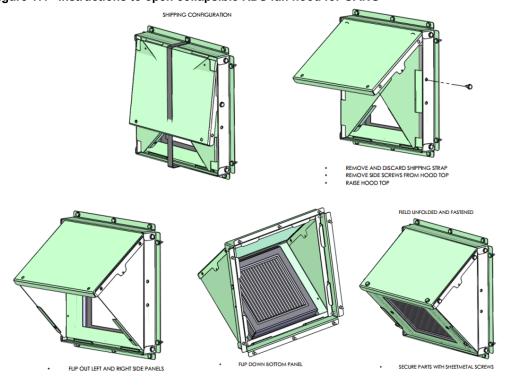


Figure 17. Instructions to open collapsible RDS fan hood for OANG





## WARNING

#### Combustible Materials!

Failure to maintain proper clearance between the unit heat exchanger, vent surfaces and combustible materials could cause a fire which could result in death or serious injury or property damage. Refer to unit nameplate and installation instructions for proper clearances.

## AVERTISSEMENT

#### Matériaux combustibles!

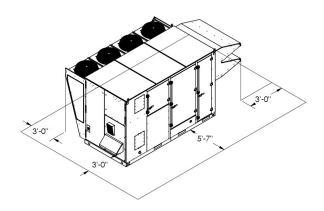
Tout manquement à l'obligation de maintenir une distance appropriée entre l'échangeur de chaleur de l'unité, les surfaces de ventilation et les matériaux combustibles peut provoquer un incendie pouvant résulter en des blessures corporelles graves, voire mortelles, ou des dommages matériels. Reportez-vous à la plaque signalétique de l'unité et aux instructions d'installation pour connaître les distances appropriées.

## **OAND Units**

## **Unit Clearances**

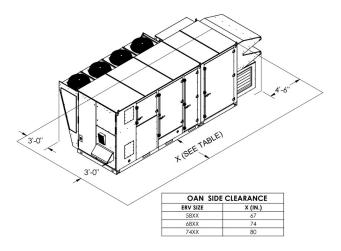
Note: Minimum clearance above the unit is 72 inches.

Figure 18. Typical installation clearances for OAND unit



Note: Minimum clearance above the unit is 72 inches.

Figure 19. Typical installation clearances for OAND unit with auxiliary cabinet



**Note:** Certain options require auxiliary cabinet. Refer to project-specific unit submittals.

Figure 20. Typical installation clearances for OAND unit

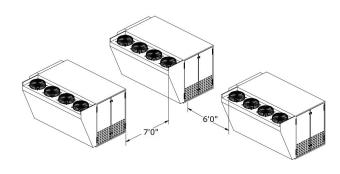
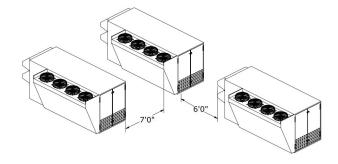


Figure 21. Typical installation clearances for OAND unit with auxiliary cabinet



**Note:** Certain options require auxiliary cabinet. Refer to project-specific unit submittals.



## **Curb Dimensions**

Figure 22. Unit curb data for OAND 30 to 60 tons

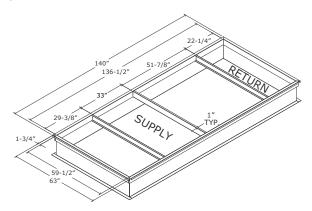
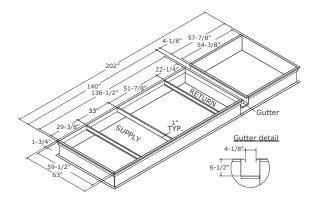


Figure 23. Unit curb data for OAND 30 to 60 tons with auxiliary cabinet

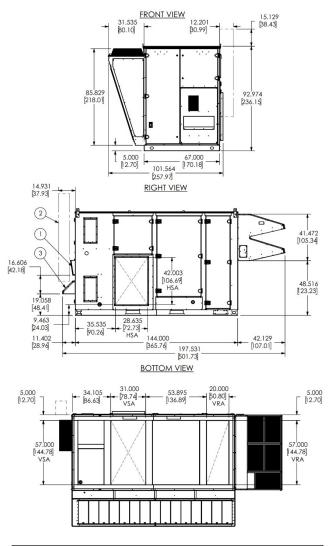


**Note:** Certain options require auxiliary cabinet. Refer to project-specific unit submittals.



## **Dimensional Data**

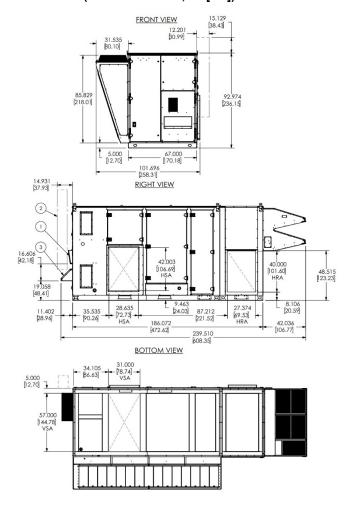
Figure 24. Unit dimensional data for OAND 30 to 60 tons, horizontal supply and vertical/no return (dual dimensions, in. [cm])



#### CONFIGURATION SPECIFIC NOTES:

- 1. FLUE HOOD: INCLUDED WITH 300-500MBH GAS HEAT
- 2. FLUE EXTENSION: INCLUDED WITH 600-1000MBH GAS HEAT
- 3. COMBUSTION AIR INTAKE: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT

Figure 25. Unit dimensional data for OAND 30 to 60 tons, horizontal supply and horizontal return (dual dimensions, in. [cm])

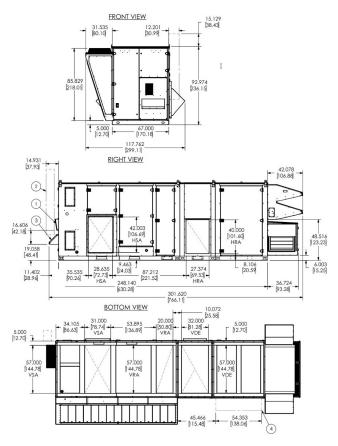


#### CONFIGURATION SPECIFIC NOTES:

- 1. FLUE HOOD: INCLUDED WITH 300-500MBH GAS HEAT
- 2. FLUE EXTENSION: INCLUDED WITH 600-1000MBH GAS HEAT
- 3. COMBUSTION AIR INTAKE: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT



Figure 26. Unit dimensional data for OAND 30 to 60 tons, horizontal supply and horizontal return with ERV (dual dimensions, in. [cm])



#### CONFIGURATION SPECIFIC NOTES:

- 1. FLUE HOOD: INCLUDED WITH 300-500MBH GAS HEAT
- 2. FLUE EXTENSION: INCLUDED WITH 600-1000MBH GAS HEAT
- 3. COMBUSTION AIR INTAKE: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT
- 4. ERV EXTENSION: ENERGY RECOVERY 68-74XX

## Notes:

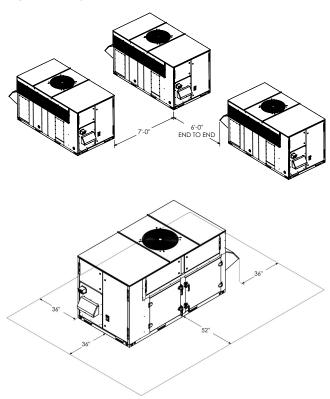
- Certain options require auxiliary cabinet. Refer to projectspecific unit submittals.
- Vertical Dedicated Exhaust (VDE) is a selectable configuration and is not standard.

## **OAB Units**

#### **Unit Clearances**

Note: Minimum clearance above the unit is 72 inches.

Figure 27. Typical installation clearances for OAB unit



Note: Minimum clearance above the unit is 72 inches.



Figure 28. Typical installation clearances for OAB unit with auxiliary cabinet

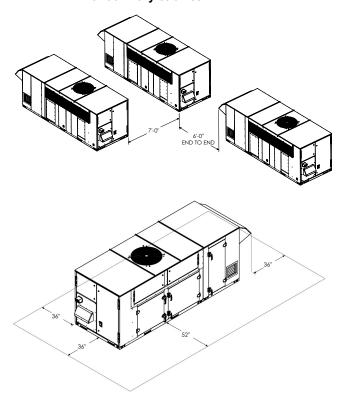
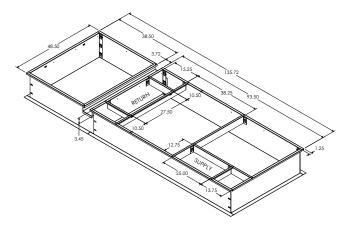


Figure 30. Unit curb data for OAB 3 to 9 tons with auxiliary cabinet

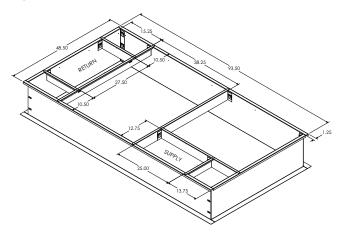


**Note:** Certain options require auxiliary cabinet. Refer to project-specific unit submittals.

**Note:** Certain options require auxiliary cabinet. Refer to project-specific unit submittals.

## **Curb Dimensions**

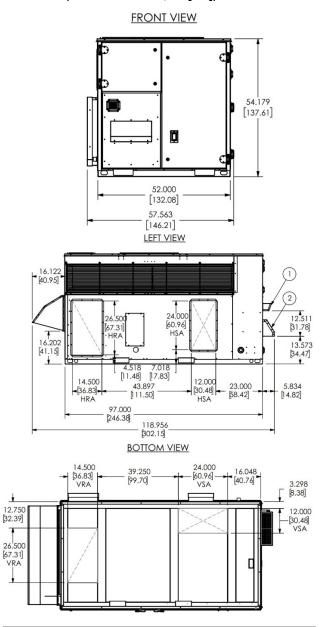
Figure 29. Unit curb data for OAB 3 to 9 tons





## **Dimensional Data**

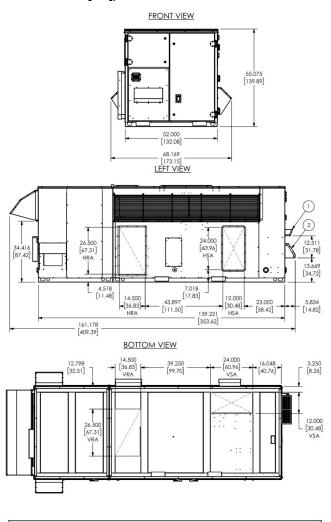
Figure 31. Unit dimensional data for OAB 3 to 9 tons (dual dimensions, in. [cm])



CONFIGURATION SPECIFIC NOTES:

- 1. FLUE HOOD: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT
- 2. COMBUSTION AIR INTAKE: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT

Figure 32. Unit dimensional data for OAB 3 to 9 tons with auxiliary cabinet (dual dimensions, in. [cm])



CONFIGURATION SPECIFIC NOTES:

- 1. FLUE HOOD: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT
- 2. COMBUSTION AIR INTAKE: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT

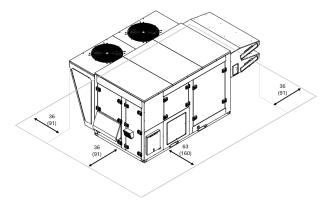
**Note:** Certain options require auxiliary cabinet. Refer to project-specific unit submittals.



## **OADG Units**

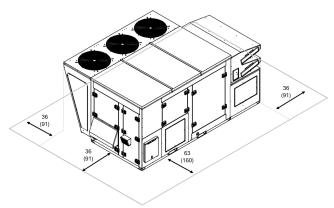
#### **Unit Clearances**

Figure 33. Installation clearances for unit with no powered exhaust or ERV, in. (cm)



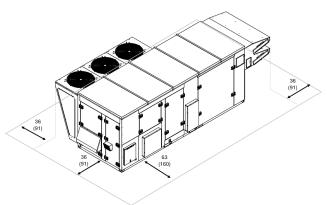
**Note:** Minimum 72 in. (182.9 cm) clearance is required above the condenser fans.

Figure 34. Installation clearances for unit with powered exhaust but no ERV, in. (cm)



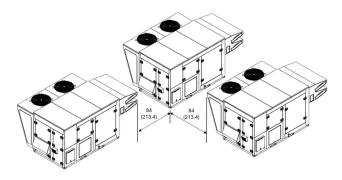
**Note:** Minimum 72 in. (182.9 cm) clearance is required above the condenser fans.

Figure 35. Installation clearances for unit with ERV, in. (cm)



**Note:** Minimum 72 in. (182.9 cm) clearance is required above the condenser fans.

Figure 36. Unit to unit clearance, in. (cm)



## **Curb Dimensions**

Figure 37. Unit curb data for OADG cabinet with no powered exhaust or ERV, in. (cm)

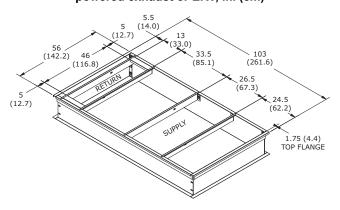
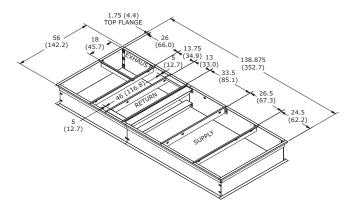


Figure 38. Unit curb data for OADG cabinet with powered exhaust but no ERV, in. (cm)





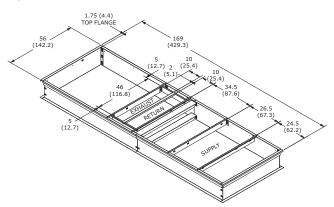
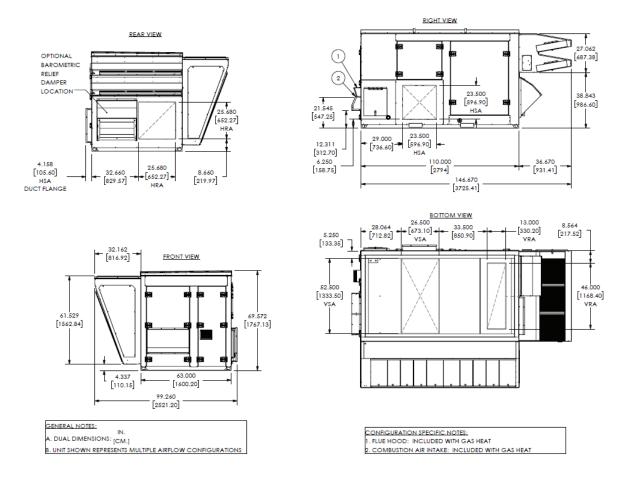


Figure 39. Unit curb data for OADG cabinet with ERV, in. (cm)

## **Dimensional Data**

Figure 40. Unit dimensional data for OADG unit with no powered exhaust or ERV, in. (cm)

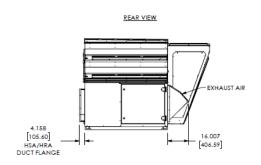


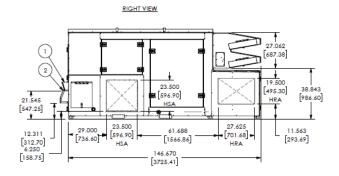
#### Notes:

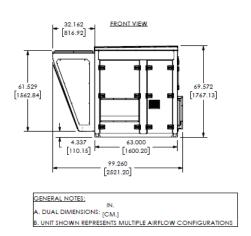
- Units with no cooling will have the same dimensions, less the condensing section.
- Units with chilled water cooling will have the same dimensions, less the condensing section, and with an 18 in. (45.7 cm) deep pipe cabinet added.

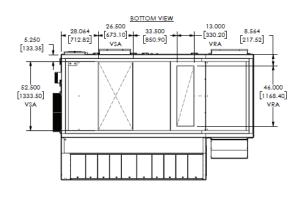
Refer to project-specific unit submittals.

Figure 41. Unit dimensional data for OADG cabinet with powered exhaust but no ERV, in. (cm)









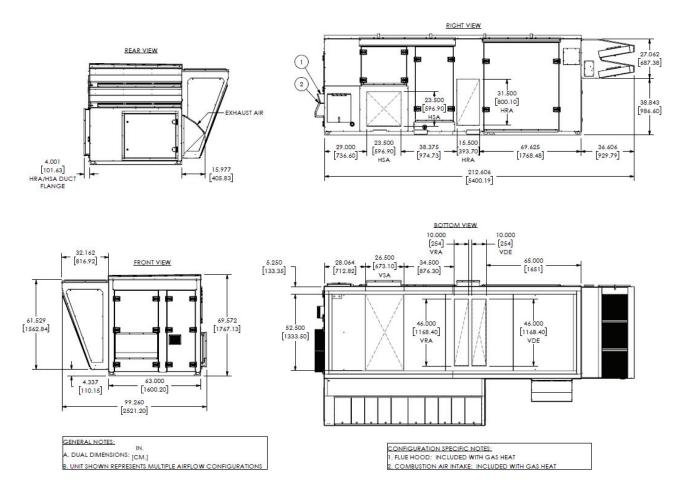
CONFIGURATION SPECIFIC NOTES; 1. FLUE HOOD: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT 2. COMBUSTION AIR INTAKE: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT

### Notes:

- Units with no cooling will have the same dimensions, less the condensing section.
- Units with chilled water cooling will have the same dimensions, less the condensing section, and with an 18 in. (45.7 cm) deep pipe cabinet added.
- · Refer to project-specific unit submittals.



Figure 42. Unit dimensional data for OADG cabinet with ERV, in. (cm)



#### Notes:

- Vertical Dedicated Exhaust (VDE) is a selectable configuration and is not standard.
- Units with no cooling will have the same dimensions, less the condensing section.
- Units with chilled water cooling will have the same dimensions, less the condensing section, and with an 18 in. (45.7 cm) deep pipe cabinet added.

• Refer to project-specific unit submittals.



## **OANG Units**

#### **Unit Clearances**

Figure 43. Installation clearances for units with no powered exhaust or ERV, in. (cm)

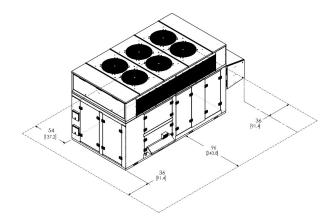
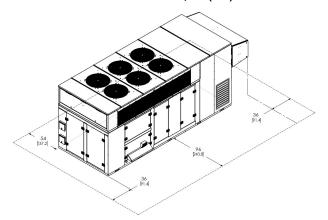
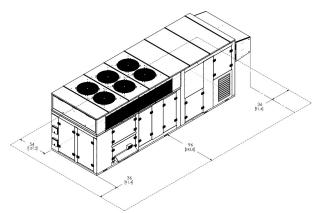


Figure 44. Installation clearances for unit with powered exhaust but no ERV, in. (cm)



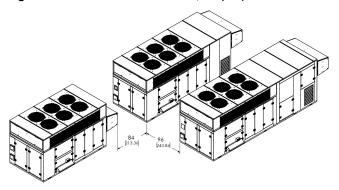
**Note:** Minimum 72 in. (182.9 cm) clearance is required above the condenser fans.

Figure 45. Installation clearances for unit with ERV, in. (cm)



**Note:** Minimum 72 in. (182.9 cm) clearance is required above the condenser fans.

Figure 46. Unit to unit clearance, in. (cm)



## **Curb Dimensions**

Figure 47. Unit curb data for OANG cabinet with no powered exhaust or ERV, in. (cm)

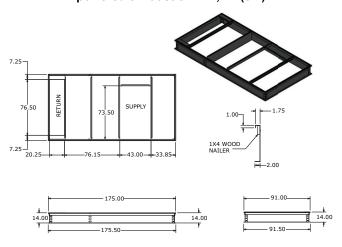
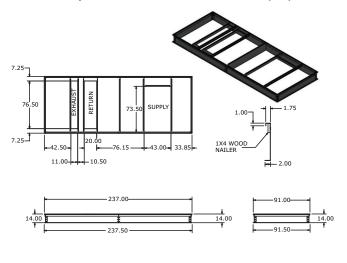


Figure 48. Unit curb data for OANG cabinet with powered exhaust but no ERV, in. (cm)





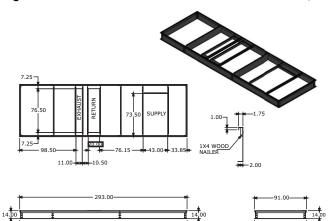
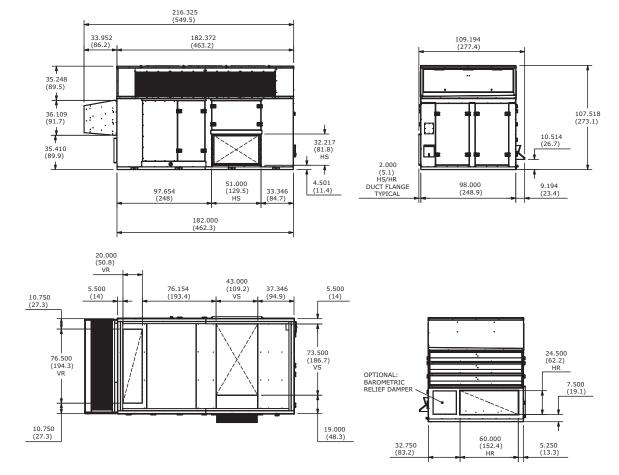


Figure 49. Unit curb data for OANG cabinet with ERV, in. (cm)

## **Dimensional Data**

Figure 50. Unit dimensional data for OANG unit with no powered exhaust or ERV, in. (cm)

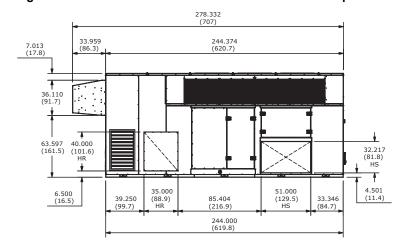


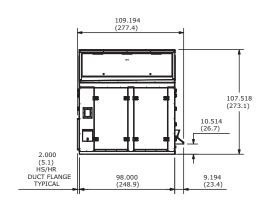
#### Notes:

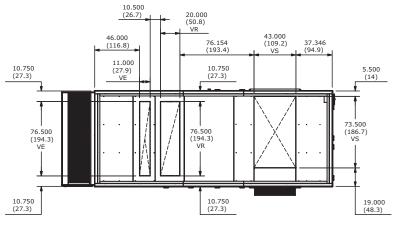
- Units with no cooling will have the same dimensions, less the condensing section.
- Units with chilled water cooling will have the same dimensions, less the condensing section, and with an 18 in. (45.7 cm) deep pipe cabinet added.
- Refer to project-specific unit submittals.



Figure 51. Unit dimensional data for OANG cabinet with powered exhaust but no ERV, in. (cm)









## Notes:

- Vertical Dedicated Exhaust (VDE) is a selectable configuration and is not standard.
- Units with no cooling will have the same dimensions, less the condensing section.
- Units with chilled water cooling will have the same dimensions, less the condensing section, and with an 18 in. (45.7 cm) deep pipe cabinet added.

· Refer to project-specific unit submittals.



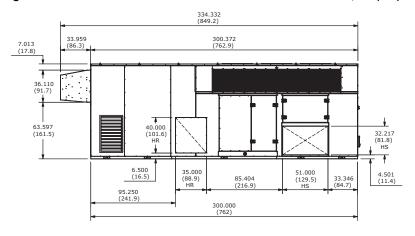
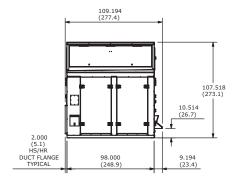
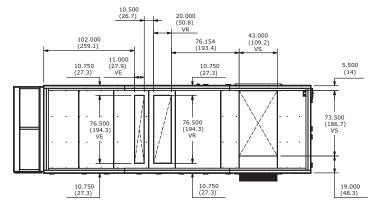


Figure 52. Unit dimensional data for OANG cabinet with ERV, in. (cm)







#### Notes:

- Vertical Dedicated Exhaust (VDE) is a selectable configuration and is not standard.
- Units with no cooling will have the same dimensions, less the condensing section.
- Units with chilled water cooling will have the same dimensions, less the condensing section, and with an 18 in. (45.7 cm) deep pipe cabinet added.
- Refer to project-specific unit submittals.

## **Outdoor WSHP Units**

## **OABE Units**

## **Unit Clearances**

Note: Minimum clearance above the unit is 72 inches.

Figure 53. Typical installation clearances for OABE unit

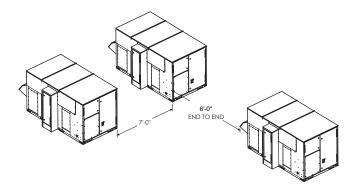
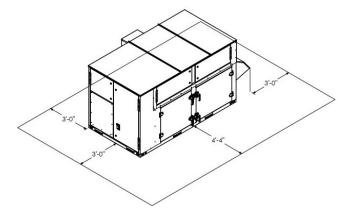


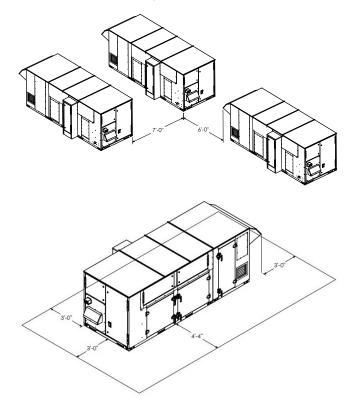


Figure 53. Typical installation clearances for OABE unit



Note: Minimum clearance above the unit is 72 inches.

Figure 54. Typical installation clearances for OABE unit with auxiliary cabinet



**Note:** Certain options require auxiliary cabinet. Refer to project-specific unit submittals.



## **Curb Dimensions**

#### Figure 55. Unit curb data for OABE 3 to 9 tons

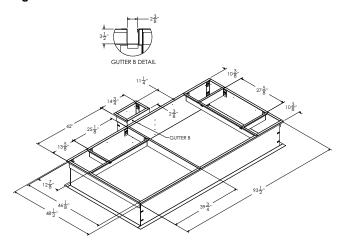
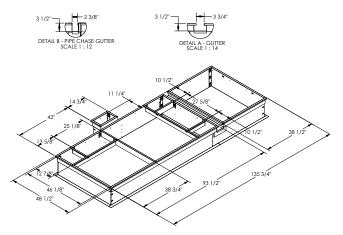


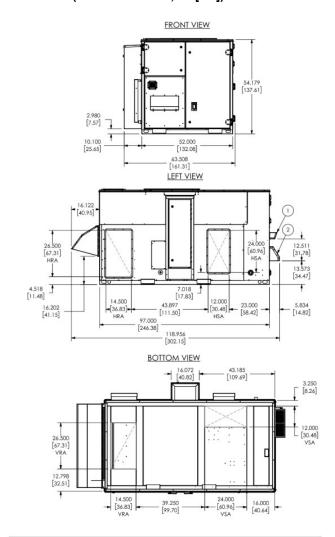
Figure 56. Unit curb data for OABE 3 to 9 tons with auxiliary cabinet



**Note:** Certain options require auxiliary cabinet. Refer to project-specific unit submittals.

## **Dimensional Data**

Figure 57. Unit dimensional data for OABE 3 to 9 tons (dual dimensions, in. [cm])

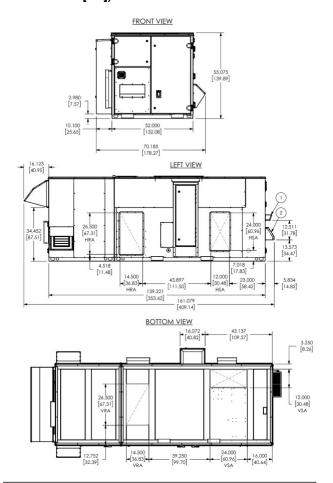


CONFIGURATION SPECIFIC NOTES:

1. FLUE HOOD: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT

2. COMBUSTION AIR INTAKE: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT

Figure 58. Unit dimensional data for OABE 3 to 9 tons with auxiliary cabinet (dual dimensions, in. [cm])



CONFIGURATION SPECIFIC NOTES:

1. FLUE HOOD: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT

2. COMBUSTION AIR INTAKE: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT

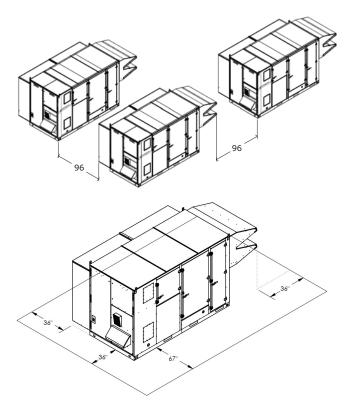
**Note:** Certain options require auxiliary cabinet. Refer to project-specific unit submittals.

## **OANE Units**

## **Unit Clearances**

Note: Minimum clearance above the unit is 72 inches.

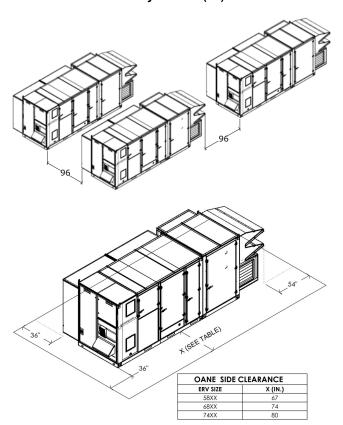
Figure 59. Typical installation clearances for OANE unit





Note: Minimum clearance above the unit is 72 inches.

Figure 60. Typical installation clearances for OANE unit with auxiliary cabinet (in.)



**Note:** Certain options require auxiliary cabinet. Refer to project-specific unit submittals.

## **Curb Dimensions**

Figure 61. Unit curb data for OANE 30 to 60 tons (in.)

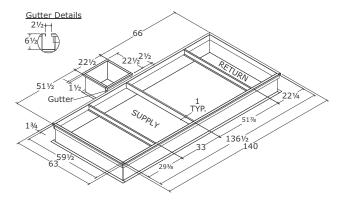
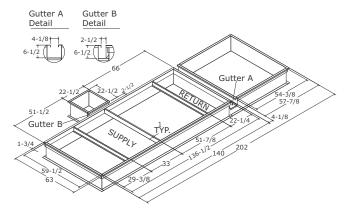


Figure 62. Unit curb data for OANE 30 to 60 tons with auxiliary cabinet (in.)

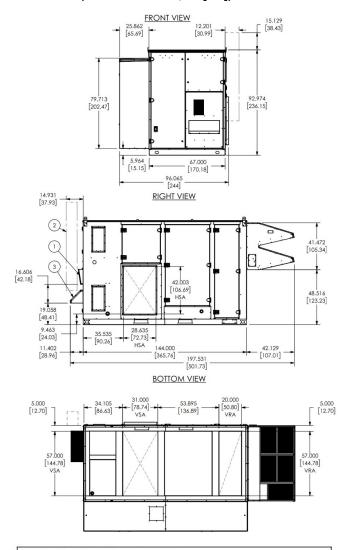


**Note:** Certain options require auxiliary cabinet. Refer to project-specific unit submittals.



## **Dimensional Data**

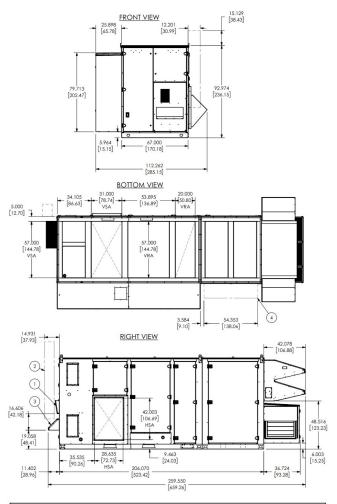
Figure 63. Unit dimensional data for OANE 30 to 60 tons (dual dimensions, in. [cm])



#### CONFIGURATION SPECIFIC NOTES:

- 1. FLUE HOOD: INCLUDED WITH 300-500MBH GAS HEAT
- 2. FLUE EXTENSION: INCLUDED WITH 600-1000MBH GAS HEAT
- 3. COMBUSTION AIR INTAKE: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT

Figure 64. Unit dimensional data for OANE 30 to 60 tons with auxiliary cabinet (dual dimensions, in. [cm])



#### CONFIGURATION SPECIFIC NOTES:

- 1. FLUE HOOD: INCLUDED WITH 300-500MBH GAS HEAT
- 2. FLUE EXTENSION: INCLUDED WITH 600-1000MBH GAS HEAT
- 3. COMBUSTION AIR INTAKE: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT
- 4. ERV EXTENSION: ENERGY RECOVERY 68-74XX

**Note:** Certain options require auxiliary cabinet. Refer to project-specific unit submittals.



## **OADG Units**

## **Dimensional Data**

Figure 65. Unit dimensional data for OADG outdoor WSHP, in. (cm)

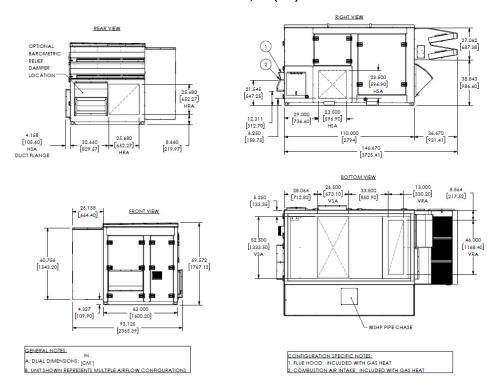


Figure 66. Unit dimensional data for OADG outdoor WSHP with Power Exhaust, in. (cm)

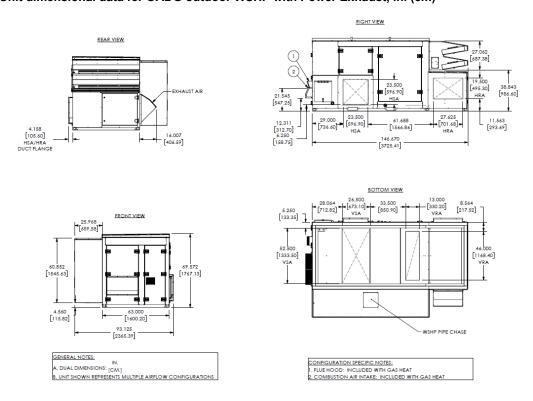
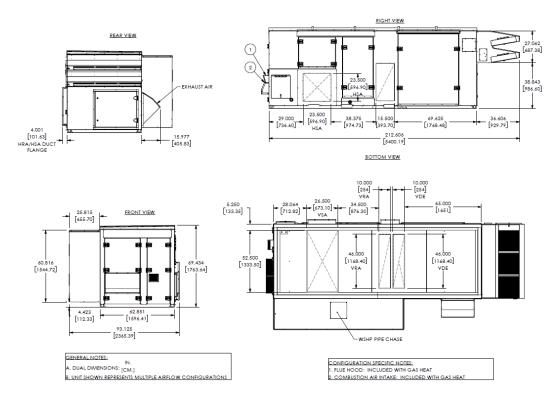


Figure 67. Unit dimensional data for OADG outdoor WSHP with ERV, in. (cm)



**Note:** Vertical Dedicated Exhaust (VDE) is a selectable configuration and is not standard.



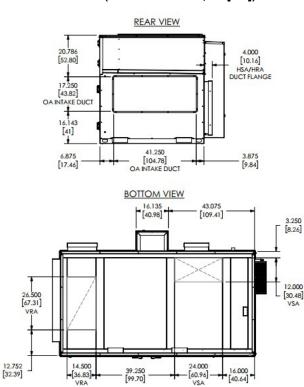
# Indoor Water Source Heat Pump (WSHP) Units

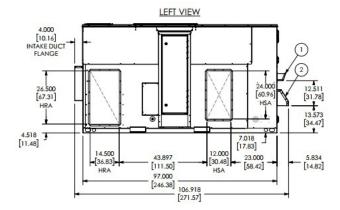
#### **OABF Units**

**Note:** Indoor units have the same clearances as outdoor units. Refer to (outdoor OABE unit clearances).

#### **Dimensional Data**

Figure 68. Unit dimensional data for indoor OABF WSHP (dual dimensions, in. [cm])

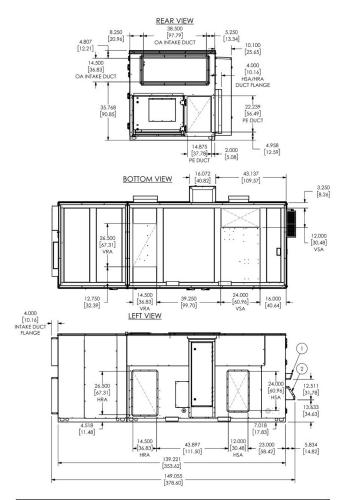




CONFIGURATION SPECIFIC NOTES:

- 1. FLUE HOOD: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT
- 2. COMBUSTION AIR INTAKE: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT

Figure 69. Unit dimensional data for indoor OABF WSHP and ERV or exhaust fan (dual dimensions, in. [cm])



CONFIGURATION SPECIFIC NOTES:

- 1. FLUE HOOD: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT
- 2. COMBUSTION AIR INTAKE: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT

## **OANF Units**

**Note:** Indoor units have the same clearances as outdoor units. Refer to (outdoor OANE unit clearances).

#### **Dimensional Data**

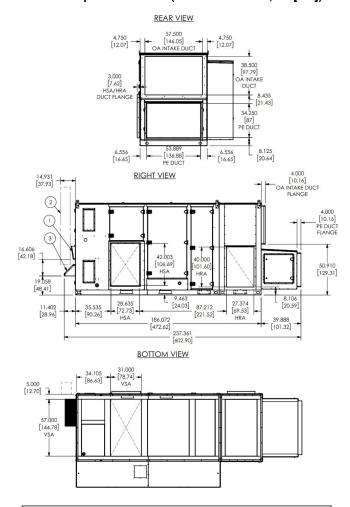
Figure 70. Unit dimensional data for indoor OANF WSHP (dual dimensions, in. [cm])

**REAR VIEW** 38.500 [97.79] 3.000 [7.62] HSA DUCT FLANGE OA INTAKE DUCT 50.810 [129.06] - [146.05] OA INTAKE DUCT 14.931 4.000 [10.16] **RIGHT VIEW** [37.93] OA INTAKE DUCT FLANGE 2 (3) 16.606 [42.18] 42,003 [106.69] 50,923 HSA [48.41] [72.73]-90.26 11.402 144.000 [28.96] [365.76] 159.548 [405.25] **BOTTOM VIEW** 31 000 20,000 5.000 [78.74] [50.80] 136.89 [12.70] 5,000 VSA VRA [144.78] 144.78

CONFIGURATION SPECIFIC NOTES:

- FLUE HOOD: INCLUDED WITH 300-500MBH GAS HEAT
- 2. FLUE EXTENSION: INCLUDED WITH 600-1000MBH GAS HEAT
- 3. COMBUSTION AIR INTAKE: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT

Figure 71. Unit dimensional data for indoor OANF WSHP with horizontal supply/return with power exhaust (dual dimensions, in. [cm])



CONFIGURATION SPECIFIC NOTES:

- 1. FLUE HOOD: INCLUDED WITH 300-500MBH GAS HEAT
- 2. FLUE EXTENSION: INCLUDED WITH 600-1000MBH GAS HEAT
- 3. COMBUSTION AIR INTAKE: INCLUDED WITH GAS HEAT



## **OADG Units**

Figure 72. Unit dimensional data for OADG indoor WSHP, in. (cm)

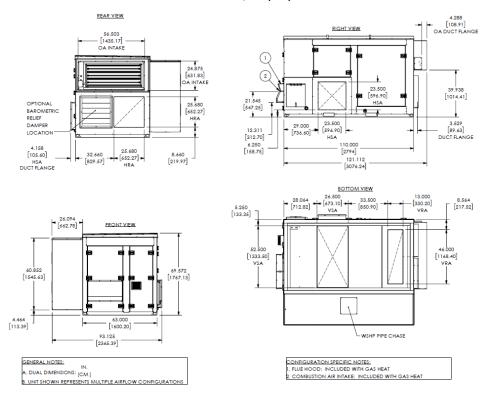


Figure 73. Unit dimensional data for OADG indoor WSHP with Power Exhaust, in. (cm)

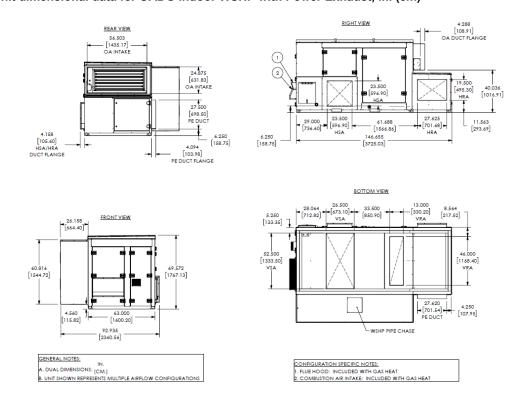
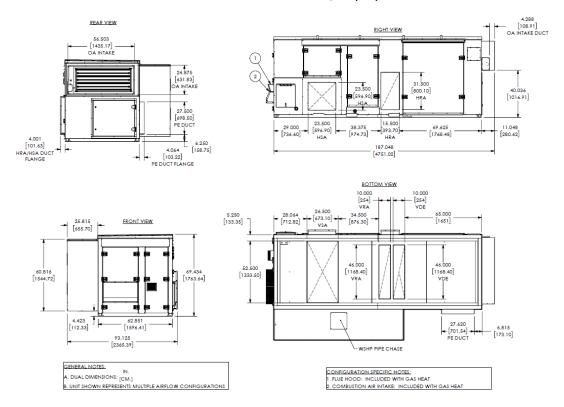


Figure 74. Unit dimensional data for OADG indoor WSHP with ERV, in. (cm)



**Note:** Vertical Dedicated Exhaust (VDE) is a selectable configuration and is not standard.



# **Unit Weight and Rigging**

## **AWARNING**

## **Heavy Objects!**

Failure to follow instructions below or properly lift unit could result in unit dropping and possibly crushing operator/technician which could result in death or serious injury, and equipment or property-only damage. Ensure that all the lifting equipment used is properly rated for the weight of the unit being lifted. Each of the cables (chains or slings), hooks, and shackles used to lift the unit must be capable of supporting the entire weight of the unit. Lifting cables (chains or slings) may not be of the same length. Adjust as necessary for even unit lift.

## **AAVERTISSEMENT**

## **Objets lourds!**

Le non-respect des instructions ci-dessous ou un levage inapproprié de l'unité peut provoquer sa chute voire écraser l'opérateur/le technicien, ce qui peut occasionner des blessures graves voire mortelles, et éventuellement endommager l'équipement ou provoquer des dégâts matériels. Assurez-vous que l'équipement de levage utilisé est adapté au poids de l'unité à soulever. Chaque câble (chaîne ou élingue), crochet ou manille utilisé pour le levage de l'unité doit être assez robuste pour supporter le poids total de l'unité. Les câbles, chaînes ou élingues de levage ne doivent pas être de longueur identique. Procédez au réglage afin de soulever l'unité de manière équilibrée.

## **AWARNING**

## **Improper Unit Lift!**

Failure to properly lift unit could result in unit dropping and possibly crushing operator/technician which could result in death or serious injury, and equipment or property-only damage. Test lift unit approximately 24 inches to verify proper center of gravity lift point. To avoid dropping of unit, reposition lifting point if unit is not level.

## AAVERTISSEMENT

#### Levage inapproprié de l'unité!

Le non-respect des instructions ci-dessous ou un levage inapproprié de l'unité peut provoquer sa chute voire écraser l'opérateur/le technicien, ce qui peut occasionner des blessures graves voire mortelles, et éventuellement endommager l'équipement ou provoquer des dégâts matériels. Faites un test de levage de l'unité d'environ 60 cm (24 po) afin de vérifier que le point de levage correspond au centre de gravité de l'appareil. Pour éviter une chute de celle-ci, ajustez son point de levage si elle n'est pas à l'horizontale.

# **Unit Weights**

Table 7. Typical unit weights<sup>(a)</sup> - Without powered exhaust, without ERV

| Model Number | Weig | Weight (lb) |        | Center-of-Gravity (in.) |          | Corner Weight (% of total weight) <sup>(b)</sup> |          |          |  |  |
|--------------|------|-------------|--------|-------------------------|----------|--|----------|----------|--|--|
| Model Number | Min  | Max         | Length | Width                   | Corner A | Corner B   | Corner C | Corner D |  |  |
| OAB*036      | 1295 | 1806        | 46.1   | 24.1                    | 28       | 26   | 27       | 20       |  |  |
| OAB*048      | 1295 | 1806        | 46.6   | 23.9                    | 30       | 24   | 28       | 18       |  |  |
| OAB*060      | 1295 | 1806        | 45.9   | 23.9                    | 29       | 25   | 28       | 18       |  |  |
| OAB*072      | 1295 | 1806        | 47.5   | 23.8                    | 31       | 24   | 27       | 18       |  |  |
| OAB*084      | 1295 | 1806        | 46.5   | 24.0                    | 29       | 25   | 28       | 19       |  |  |
| OAB*096      | 1295 | 1806        | 46.7   | 24.1                    | 31       | 22   | 30       | 17       |  |  |
| OAB*108      | 1295 | 1806        | 46.2   | 24.0                    | 27       | 27   | 25       | 21       |  |  |
| OADG010      | 2319 | 3985        | 54.0   | 41.1                    | 20       | 15   | 36       | 29       |  |  |
| OADG012      | 2319 | 3985        | 54.1   | 41.3                    | 23       | 11   | 39       | 26       |  |  |
| OADG015      | 2319 | 3985        | 53.3   | 41.1                    | 19       | 16   | 36       | 29       |  |  |
| OADG017      | 2319 | 3985        | 53.4   | 41.0                    | 21       | 21   | 37       | 28       |  |  |
| OADG020      | 2319 | 3985        | 54.2   | 41.7                    | 19       | 19   | 36       | 30       |  |  |
| OADG025      | 2319 | 3985        | 53.4   | 41.0                    | 21       | 21   | 37       | 28       |  |  |
| OADG030      | 2319 | 3985        | 53.4   | 41.0                    | 21       | 21   | 37       | 28       |  |  |
| OAN*360      | 5207 | 7900        | 69.4   | 41.4                    | 19       | 19   | 32       | 29       |  |  |



## **Unit Weight and Rigging**

Typical unit weights<sup>(a)</sup> - Without powered exhaust, without ERV (continued) Table 7.

| Model Number | Weigl | Weight (lb) |        | Center-of-Gravity (in.) |          | Corner Weight (% of total weight) <sup>(b)</sup> |          |          |  |
|--------------|-------|-------------|--------|-------------------------|----------|--|----------|----------|--|
|              | Min   | Max         | Length | Width                   | Corner A | Corner B   | Corner C | Corner D |  |
| OAN*420      | 5207  | 7900        | 71.9   | 42.1                    | 20       | 18   | 32       | 30       |  |
| OAN*480      | 5207  | 7900        | 70.4   | 41.3                    | 20       | 18   | 33       | 29       |  |
| OAN*540      | 5207  | 7900        | 71.1   | 40.8                    | 20       | 19   | 32       | 29       |  |
| OAN*600      | 5207  | 7900        | 68.6   | 41.8                    | 18       | 20   | 32       | 30       |  |
| OAN*648      | 5207  | 7900        | 67.4   | 41.4                    | 17       | 21   | 32       | 30       |  |
| OAN*720      | 5207  | 7900        | 67.4   | 41.4                    | 17       | 21   | 32       | 30       |  |
| OANG040      | 6560  | 9618        | 87.2   | 50.1                    | 24       | 26   | 26       | 24       |  |
| OANG045      | 6560  | 9618        | 87.2   | 50.1                    | 24       | 26   | 26       | 24       |  |
| OANG050      | 6560  | 9618        | 91.4   | 50.2                    | 24       | 26   | 26       | 24       |  |
| OANG055      | 6560  | 9618        | 91.4   | 50.2                    | 24       | 26   | 26       | 24       |  |
| OANG060      | 6560  | 9618        | 96.0   | 50.5                    | 24       | 26   | 26       | 24       |  |
| OANG070      | 6560  | 9618        | 87.2   | 50.1                    | 24       | 26   | 26       | 24       |  |
| OANG080      | 6560  | 9618        | 95.6   | 50.7                    | 24       | 26   | 26       | 24       |  |

<sup>(</sup>a) Minimum and maximum weights vary widely due to the highly configurable nature of the product (b) See "Corner Weights," p. 66 for corner locations.

Table 8. Typical unit weights<sup>(a)</sup> - With powered exhaust, without ERV

| Madal Nasalasa | Weight (lb) |      | Center-of-Gravity (in.) |       | Corner Weight (% of total weight) <sup>(b)</sup> |          |          |          |
|----------------|-------------|------|-------------------------|-------|--|----------|----------|----------|
| Model Number   | Min         | Max  | Length                  | Width | Corner A   | Corner B | Corner C | Corner D |
| OAB*036        | 1648        | 2422 | 68.8                    | 24.8  | 36   | 17       | 34       | 14       |
| OAB*048        | 1648        | 2422 | 63.6                    | 24.1  | 32   | 22       | 32       | 14       |
| OAB*060        | 1648        | 2422 | 65.5                    | 24.3  | 29   | 24       | 29       | 18       |
| OAB*072        | 1648        | 2423 | 65.2                    | 24.2  | 29   | 25       | 29       | 18       |
| OAB*084        | 1648        | 2422 | 63.0                    | 24.0  | 22   | 32       | 23       | 23       |
| OAB*096        | 1648        | 2424 | 65.5                    | 24.3  | 29   | 24       | 29       | 18       |
| OAB*108        | 1648        | 2422 | 66.9                    | 24.6  | 29   | 24       | 28       | 19       |
| OADG010        | 3080        | 4807 | 66.0                    | 38.3  | 22   | 18       | 37       | 23       |
| OADG012        | 3080        | 4807 | 62.5                    | 40.2  | 23   | 13       | 44       | 20       |
| OADG015        | 3080        | 4807 | 59.5                    | 40.2  | 22   | 15       | 45       | 19       |
| OADG017        | 3080        | 4807 | 60.5                    | 39.9  | 22   | 15       | 44       | 19       |
| OADG020        | 3080        | 4807 | 60.1                    | 39.8  | 21   | 16       | 43       | 21       |
| OADG025        | 3080        | 4807 | 60.1                    | 39.8  | 21   | 16       | 43       | 21       |
| OADG030        | 3080        | 4807 | 60.1                    | 39.8  | 21   | 16       | 43       | 21       |
| OAN*360        | 6099        | 8474 | 71.9                    | 39.5  | 19   | 22       | 28       | 31       |
| OAN*420        | 6099        | 8474 | 74.5                    | 41.0  | 17   | 22       | 26       | 35       |
| OAN*480        | 6099        | 8474 | 74.5                    | 41.0  | 17   | 22       | 26       | 35       |
| OAN*540        | 6099        | 8474 | 73.4                    | 41.5  | 18   | 20       | 29       | 33       |
| OAN*600        | 6099        | 8474 | 77.0                    | 41.2  | 18   | 21       | 26       | 36       |
| OAN*648        | 6099        | 8474 | 75.2                    | 41.4  | 15   | 23       | 24       | 37       |

Typical unit weights<sup>(a)</sup> - With powered exhaust, without ERV (continued) Table 8.

| Model Number | Weight (lb) |       | Center-of-Gravity (in.) |       | Corner Weight (% of total weight) <sup>(b)</sup> |          |          | (b)      |
|--------------|-------------|-------|-------------------------|-------|--|----------|----------|----------|
| Woder Number | Min         | Max   | Length                  | Width | Corner A   | Corner B | Corner C | Corner D |
| OAN*720      | 6099        | 8474  | 75.2                    | 41.4  | 15   | 23       | 24       | 37       |
| OANG040      | 7667        | 11394 | 106.8                   | 49.9  | 25   | 27       | 28       | 20       |
| OANG045      | 7667        | 11394 | 106.8                   | 49.9  | 25   | 27       | 28       | 20       |
| OANG050      | 7667        | 11394 | 106.8                   | 49.9  | 25   | 27       | 28       | 20       |
| OANG055      | 7667        | 11394 | 115.9                   | 49.9  | 25   | 27       | 28       | 20       |
| OANG060      | 7667        | 11394 | 115.9                   | 49.9  | 25   | 27       | 28       | 20       |
| OANG070      | 7667        | 11394 | 120.5                   | 50.0  | 25   | 27       | 28       | 20       |
| OANG080      | 7667        | 11394 | 125.0                   | 50.5  | 25   | 27       | 28       | 20       |

<sup>(</sup>a) Minimum and maximum weights vary widely due to the highly configurable nature of the product (b) See "Corner Weights," p. 66 for corner locations.

Table 9. Typical unit weights<sup>(a)</sup> - With powered exhaust, with ERV

| Model Number | Weight (lb) |       | Center-of-Gravity (in.) |       | Corner Weight (% of total weight) <sup>(b)</sup> |          |          |          |
|--------------|-------------|-------|-------------------------|-------|--|----------|----------|----------|
| Model Number | Min         | Max   | Length                  | Width | Corner A   | Corner B | Corner C | Corner D |
| OAB*036      | 1780        | 2596  | 68.1                    | 24.3  | 31   | 22       | 29       | 18       |
| OAB*048      | 1780        | 2596  | 68.9                    | 24.0  | 31   | 23       | 27       | 19       |
| OAB*060      | 1780        | 2596  | 67.0                    | 24.1  | 28   | 25       | 26       | 20       |
| OAB*072      | 1780        | 2597  | 67.0                    | 24.4  | 25   | 28       | 24       | 23       |
| OAB*084      | 1780        | 2596  | 68.3                    | 24.4  | 28   | 26       | 25       | 22       |
| OAB*096      | 1780        | 2598  | 67.3                    | 24.2  | 30   | 24       | 28       | 19       |
| OAB*108      | 1780        | 2596  | 68.1                    | 24.0  | 28   | 26       | 25       | 21       |
| OADG010      | 3515        | 5344  | 78.8                    | 38.3  | 20   | 19       | 36       | 24       |
| OADG012      | 3515        | 5344  | 78.4                    | 38.3  | 20   | 19       | 36       | 25       |
| OADG015      | 3515        | 5344  | 78.0                    | 38.5  | 22   | 17       | 38       | 23       |
| OADG017      | 3515        | 5344  | 77.3                    | 38.7  | 21   | 18       | 38       | 23       |
| OADG020      | 3515        | 5344  | 78.8                    | 39.3  | 18   | 20       | 36       | 27       |
| OADG025      | 3515        | 5344  | 78.8                    | 39.3  | 18   | 20       | 36       | 27       |
| OADG030      | 3515        | 5344  | 78.8                    | 39.3  | 18   | 20       | 36       | 27       |
| OAN*360      | 7160        | 9281  | 101.1                   | 41.0  | 18   | 21       | 30       | 32       |
| OAN*420      | 7160        | 9281  | 101.1                   | 41.0  | 18   | 21       | 30       | 32       |
| OAN*480      | 7160        | 9281  | 103.2                   | 40.0  | 19   | 22       | 28       | 31       |
| OAN*540      | 7160        | 9281  | 105.0                   | 41.5  | 18   | 20       | 29       | 33       |
| OAN*600      | 7160        | 9281  | 100.0                   | 41.0  | 19   | 20       | 31       | 30       |
| OAN*648      | 7160        | 9281  | 100.9                   | 41.2  | 16   | 22       | 29       | 33       |
| OAN*720      | 7160        | 9281  | 100.9                   | 41.2  | 16   | 22       | 29       | 33       |
| OANG040      | 8876        | 13070 | 143.4                   | 49.2  | 24   | 25       | 30       | 21       |
| OANG045      | 8876        | 13070 | 143.4                   | 49.2  | 24   | 25       | 30       | 21       |
| OANG050      | 8876        | 13070 | 143.4                   | 49.2  | 24   | 25       | 30       | 21       |
| OANG055      | 8876        | 13070 | 146.2                   | 49.3  | 24   | 25       | 30       | 21       |



## **Unit Weight and Rigging**

Table 9. Typical unit weights<sup>(a)</sup> - With powered exhaust, with ERV (continued)

| Model Number | Weight (lb) |       | Center-of-Gravity (in.) |       | Corner Weight (% of total weight) <sup>(b)</sup> |          |          |          |
|--------------|-------------|-------|-------------------------|-------|--|----------|----------|----------|
| Woder Number | Min         | Max   | Length                  | Width | Corner A   | Corner B | Corner C | Corner D |
| OANG060      | 8876        | 13070 | 146.2                   | 49.3  | 24   | 25       | 30       | 21       |
| OANG070      | 8876        | 13070 | 149.4                   | 49.4  | 24   | 25       | 30       | 21       |
| OANG080      | 8876        | 13070 | 151.8                   | 49.5  | 24   | 25       | 30       | 21       |

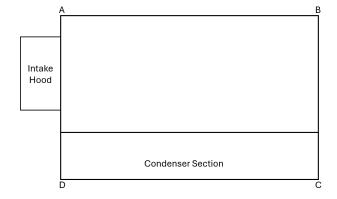
<sup>(</sup>a) Minimum and maximum weights vary widely due to the highly configurable nature of the product (b) See "Corner Weights," p. 66 for corner locations.

# **Corner Weights**

Figure 75. OAB and OANG units - top view



Figure 76. OADG and OAN units - top view



# Rigging

Figure 77. Rigging for OAND

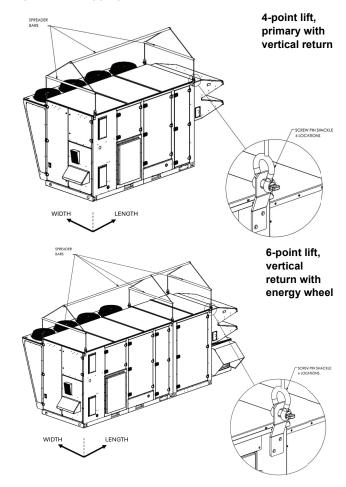
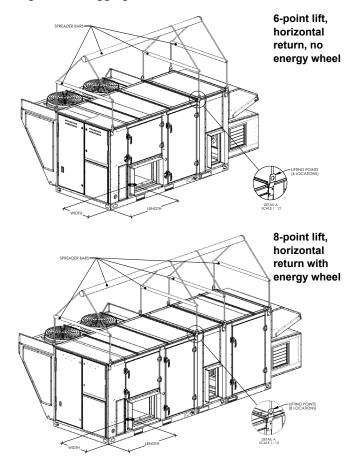




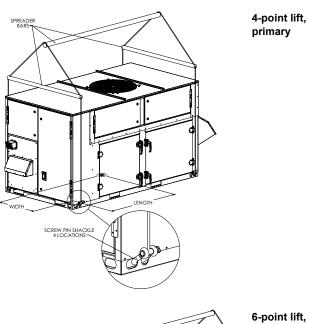
Figure 77. Rigging for OAND

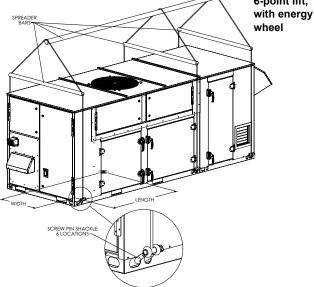


Before proceeding, see Figure 77, p. 66 for rigging drawing.

- 13. Rig the unit as shown in Figure 77, p. 66. Attach adequate strength lifting slings to all lifting brackets. Do not use cables, chains, or slings except as shown.
- 14. Install a lifting bar, as shown in Figure 77, p. 66, to protect the unit and to facilitate a uniform lift. The minimum distance between the lifting hook and the top of the unit should be 7 feet.
- 15. Test-lift the unit to ensure it is properly rigged and balanced, make any necessary rigging adjustments.
- 16. Lift the unit and position it into place. Remove fork pockets prior to setting on the curb.
- 17. Downflow units; align the base rail of the unit with the curb rail while lowering the unit onto the curb. Make sure that the gasket on the curb is not damaged while positioning the unit.

Figure 78. Rigging for OAB





Before proceeding, see Figure 78, p. 67 for rigging drawing.

- 1. Rig the unit as shown in Figure 78, p. 67. Attach adequate strength lifting slings to all lifting brackets in the unit base rail. Do not use cables, chains, or slings except as shown.
- Install a lifting bar, as shown in Figure 78, p. 67, to protect the unit and to facilitate a uniform lift. The minimum distance between the lifting hook and the top of the unit should be 7 feet.
- Test-lift the unit to ensure it is properly rigged and balanced, make any necessary rigging adjustments.
- 4. Lift the unit and position it into place. Remove fork pockets prior to setting on the curb.



## **Unit Weight and Rigging**

 Downflow units; align the base rail of the unit with the curb rail while lowering the unit onto the curb. Make sure that the gasket on the curb is not damaged while positioning the unit.

Figure 79. Four-point lift (OADG cabinet with no exhaust fan or ERV)

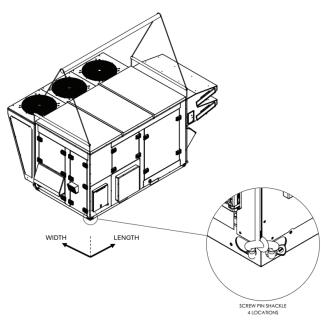


Figure 80. Four-point lift (OADG cabinet with exhaust fan and no ERV)

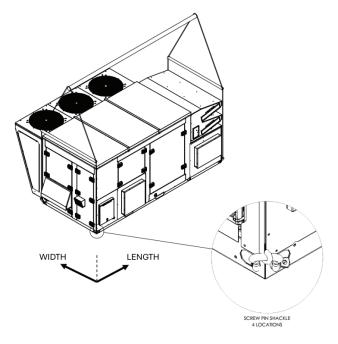


Figure 81. Six-point lift (OADG cabinet with ERV section)

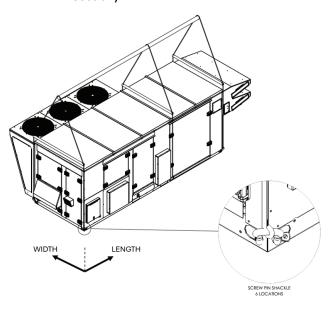


Figure 82. Eight-point lift (OANG cabinet with no exhaust fan or ERV)

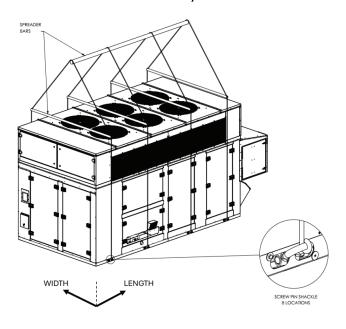




Figure 83. Ten-point lift (OANG cabinet with exhaust fan and no ERV)

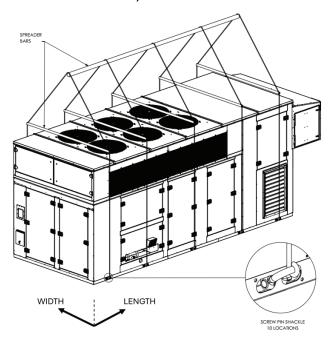
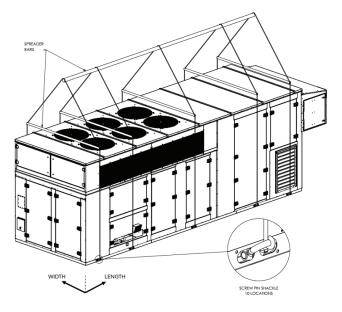


Figure 84. Ten-point lift (OANG cabinet with ERV section)



Before proceeding, see Figure 79, p. 68 to Figure 84, p. 69 for rigging drawing.

- Rig the unit as shown in Figure 79, p. 68 to Figure 84, p. 69. Attach adequate strength lifting slings to all lifting brackets in the unit base rail. Do not use cables, chains, or slings except as shown.
- 2. Install a lifting bar, as shown in Figure 79, p. 68 to Figure 84, p. 69, to protect the unit and to facilitate a

- uniform lift. The minimum distance between the lifting hook and the top of the unit should be 7 feet.
- Test-lift the unit to ensure it is properly rigged and balanced, make any necessary rigging adjustments.
- 4. Lift the unit and position it into place. Remove fork pockets prior to setting on the curb.
- Downflow units; align the base rail of the unit with the curb rail while lowering the unit onto the curb. Make sure that the gasket on the curb is not damaged while positioning the unit.



# Installation

## **AWARNING**

## **Hazardous Service Procedures!**

Failure to follow all precautions in this manual and on the tags, stickers, and labels could result in death or serious injury.

Technicians, in order to protect themselves from potential electrical, mechanical, and chemical hazards, MUST follow precautions in this manual and on the tags, stickers, and labels, as well as the following instructions: Unless specified otherwise, disconnect all electrical power including remote disconnect and discharge all energy storing devices such as capacitors before servicing. Follow proper lockout/tagout procedures to ensure the power can not be inadvertently energized. When necessary to work with live electrical components, have a qualified licensed electrician or other individual who has been trained in handling live electrical components perform these tasks.

## **AAVERTISSEMENT**

## Procédures d'entretien dangereuses!

Le non-respect de toutes les précautions contenues dans ce manuel ainsi que sur les étiquettes et les autocollants peut entraîner des blessures graves voire mortelles. Les techniciens, afin d'être protégés des éventuels risques électriques, mécaniques et chimiques, DOIVENT suivre les précautions contenues dans ce manuel, sur les étiquettes et les autocollants, ainsi que les instructions suivantes : Sauf indication contraire, coupez toute l'alimentation électrique y compris les disjoncteurs à distance et déchargez tous les dispositifs de stockage d'énergie comme les condensateurs avant l'entretien. Respectez les procédures de verrouillage et d'étiquetage appropriées pour éviter tout risque de remise sous tension accidentelle. S'il est nécessaire de travailler avec des composants électriques sous tension, demandez à un électricien qualifié et agréé ou à une autre personne ayant la formation nécessaire pour manipuler des composants électriques sous tension d'exécuter ces tâches.

#### Ductwork

Elbows with turning vanes or splitters are recommended to minimize air noise due to turbulence and to reduce static pressure.

When attaching the ductwork to the unit, provide a water-tight flexible connector at the unit to prevent operating sounds from transmitting through the ductwork.

All outdoor ductwork between the unit and the structure should be weather proofed after installation is completed.

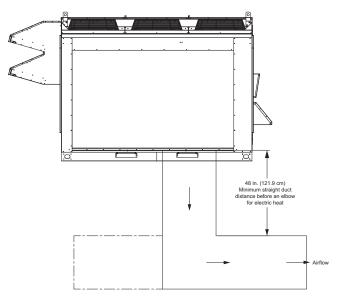
**Note:** For sound consideration, cut holes in the roof deck only for the ductwork penetrations. Do not cut out the roof deck within the entire curb perimeter. All duct work

must be installed and connected to top of roof curb before the unit is set on curb.

#### If a Curb Accessory Kit is not used:

- 1. Be sure to use flexible duct connections at the unit.
- Gaskets must be installed around the curb perimeter flange and the supply and return air opening flanges.

## **Units with Electric Heat**

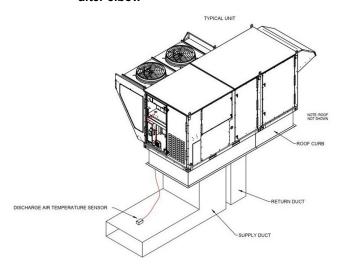


Important: Bottom discharge units with open coil electric heater in primary heat location require discharge duct with 90° elbow. This is a MANDATORY installation requirement.

- A minimum 48-inch of straight duct is required before an elbow. This is a requirement for both vertical and horizontal discharge.
- Discharge air temperature sensor to be located after elbow so it is out of **Line of Sight** to avoid detecting radiant heat. See Figure 85, p. 71.



Figure 85. Discharge air temperature sensor located after elbow



**Units with Indirect Fired Gas Heat** 

- Issue can arise with split manifold gas burner when operating below 50 percent capacity, causing airflow to not be heated throughout. See Figure 86, p. 71 hot and cold airflow locations.
- Duct tee should run front/back of the unit and not left/right for ideal install (see Figure 87, p. 71).
- Ductwork leaving unit should not have an immediate duct tee.
- Allow 4 feet of straight duct before first duct tee. This is a requirement for both vertical and horizontal discharge.
- Ensure duct work does not have an extreme transition at the outlet of the unit. Extreme transitions can cause restriction of airflow and high limit trips (see Figure 88, p. 71).

Figure 86. Vertical indirect fired duct – hot and cold airflow locations

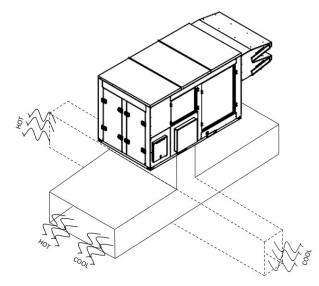


Figure 87. Vertical indirect fired duct – acceptable duct tee orientation

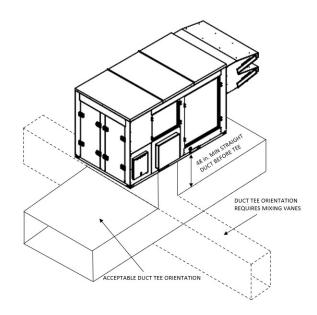
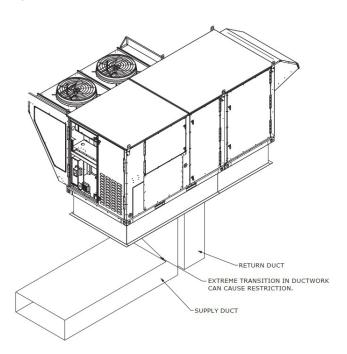
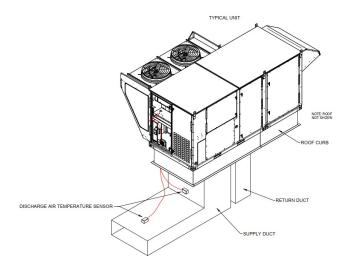


Figure 88. Extreme transition in duct work



Discharge air temperature sensor should be placed in the center of the ductwork at least 4 feet from the unit or after the first 90° bend. See Figure 89, p. 72.

## Figure 89. Discharge air sensor placed in the center



## **General Unit Requirements**

The checklist listed below is a summary of the steps required to successfully install a commercial unit. This checklist is intended to acquaint the installing personnel with what is required in the installation process. It does not replace the detailed instructions called out in the applicable sections of this manual.

- ☐ Check the unit for shipping damage and material shortage. File a freight claim and notify appropriate sales representative if damage or shortage is discovered.
- Verify that the unit nameplate model, options, and voltage are correct.
- ☐ Verify that the installation location of the unit will provide the required clearance for proper operation.
- Assemble and install the roof curb (if applicable). Refer to the latest edition of the curb installers guide that ships with each curb kit. Check curb for level installation; if not level, shim as required.
- ☐ Rigging unit (see "Unit Weight and Rigging," p. 63).
- ☐ Set the unit onto the curb; check for level.
- Ensure unit-to-curb seal is tight and without buckles or cracks.
- □ Install and connect proper condensate drain line to the evaporator condensate pan drain connection (see Figure 90, p. 72).

# **Condensate Drain Configuration**

Horizon™ OAU units are selected based on dehumidification capability. As such, condensate can form at a high rate. Therefore, the Horizon OAU drain pan and condensate line are sized and designed accordingly. However, an oftenoverlooked element of proper condensate drainage is proper P-Trap and drain line sizing and installation. An

incorrectly-designed and installed P-Trap can restrict condensate flow or cause water in the condensate drain pan to **spit** or **geyser**, which may cause condensate overflow. Carefully install and trap the drain pan to ensure adequate condensate removal under all conditions.

An evaporator condensate drain connection is provided on each unit.

A condensate trap must be installed at the unit due to the drain connection located on the **negative pressure** side of the fan. Install the P-Trap using the guidelines in Figure 90, p. 72.

For proper condensate flow during operation, the unit must be level.

Pitch drain lines connected to P-Trap at least 1/2-inch for every 10 feet of horizontal run to ensure proper condensate flow. Do not allow the horizontal run to sag, causing a possible double-trap condition which could result in condensate backup due to air lock.

Figure 90. Condensate trap installation

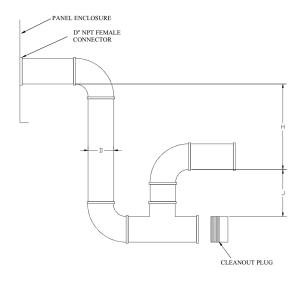


Table 10. Condensate P-Trap sizing based on static pressure

| Pressure (In. WC) | Н | J   |
|-------------------|---|-----|
| 1                 | 2 | 1.0 |
| 2                 | 3 | 1.5 |
| 3                 | 4 | 2.0 |
| 4                 | 5 | 2.5 |
| 5                 | 6 | 3.0 |

#### Notes:

- 1. Pitch drain at least 1/2 in. per 10 ft. horizontal run.
- 2. Condensate drain pan will not drain properly if P-trap is not primed and of adequate height to allow for cabinet operating negative pressure.
- Pressure is the static pressure measured in the drain pan. If unsure of operating static, use the design total static.
- For variable air volume applications, pressure must be at the maximum operating static.



# Main Electrical Power Requirements

- ☐ Verify that the power supply complies with the unit nameplate specifications.
- Inspect all control panel components; tighten any loose connections.
- Connect properly sized and protected power supply wiring to a field-supplied/-installed disconnect switch and to the main power terminal block (HTB1) in the unit control panel.
- □ Connect properly-sized earth ground.

**Note:** All field-installed wiring must comply with NEC and applicable local codes.

# **Water Coil Requirements**

Potable water sources are not to be used as a water supply for Horizon OAU equipment.

Horizon OAU equipment is not designed for entering water temperatures (EWT) greater than 200°F (93.3°C) or less than 35°F (1.7°C). Our equipment is not designed for water pressures greater than 300 psig (2 MPa) or less than 0 psig (101.4 kPa) ambient atmosphere.

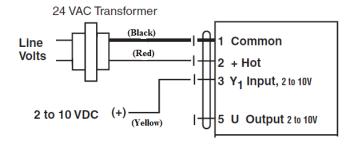
Water coils are not recommended for use with entering water temperatures less than 41°F (5°C). Glycol solutions are recommended for the operation of water coils with lower entering fluid temperatures, provided that the mediums operating temperature remains 9°F (5°C) above its freezing point.

# **Hot Water Control Valve Wiring**

- Mount the field-provided water valve on the return line of the hot water coil.
- 2. Ensure the valve is set to normally open.
- Run the 16 gauge black wire from TNS 2 to Input 1 of the actuator.
- 4. Run the 16 gauge red wire from TNS 2 to Input 2 of the actuator.
- Run the 16 gauge yellow wire from AO1 from the UC600 to Input 3 of the actuator.

**Note:** The actuator valve will be open with a 0 percent call for heat.

Figure 91. Hot water control valve wiring



# Chilled Water Connection Size and Location

Figure 92. OAB chilled water cooling pipe-chase connections

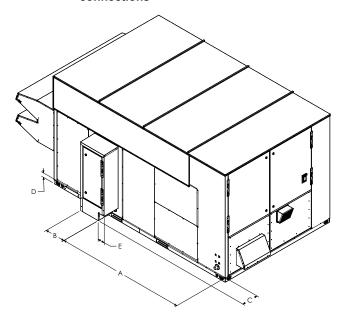


Figure 93. OAD and OAN chilled water cooling pipechase connections

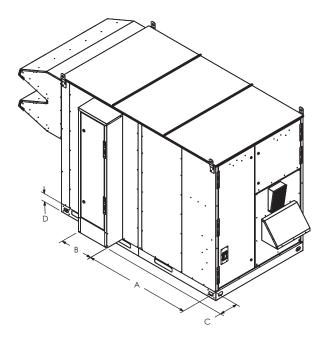


Table 11. Chilled water pipe chase location (in.)

| Unit | Α     | В     | С     | D    | E     |
|------|-------|-------|-------|------|-------|
| OAB  | 61.25 | 12.00 | 10.00 | 3.00 | 3.000 |
| OAND | 93.93 | 20.64 | 11.00 | 5.00 | NA    |
| OADG | 64.25 | 30.00 | 18.00 | 3.50 | NA    |
| OANG | 92.64 | 30.00 | 18.00 | 2.81 | NA    |

Table 12. Chilled water connection size (MPT-in.)

| Unit Size         | MPT-in. |
|-------------------|---------|
| OAB 3 to 9 tons   | 2.0     |
| OAN 30 to 60 tons | 2.0     |
| OADG, 4-row       | 1.5     |
| OADG, 6-row       | 2.0     |
| OANG, 4-row       | 2.5     |
| OANG, 6-row       | 3.0     |

# Filter Installation

The filter rack is accessible through the evaporator coil compartment door. Filter type, size, and quantity are determined by selected filter option and unit size. See "Horizon™ OAU Filter Guide," p. 108.

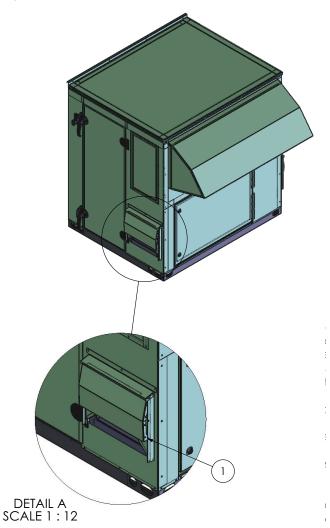
Note: Do not operate the unit without filters.

# **Opening the Collapsed Exhaust Damper Hood**

The drawings shown in this section are for one cabinet. Other cabinets may have a different appearance, but the process remains the same.

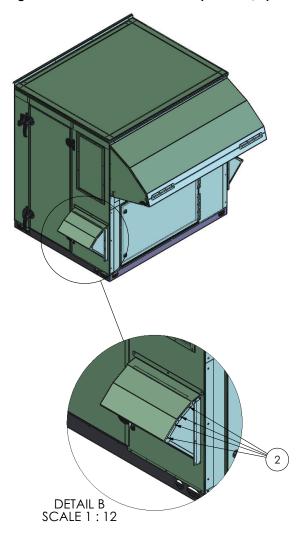
 To release the damper hood, remove the hex head sheet metal screws (one per side) shown in DETAIL A (see Figure 94, p. 74) and marked by arrow (1).

Figure 94. Powered exhaust damper hood, collapsed



- 2. Lift the hood upward and rotate the side panels outward while holding the top up.
- 3. As shown in DETAIL B (see Figure 95, p. 75) and marked by arrow (2), secure the side panels to the top of the hood using (8) hex head sheet metal screws, provided with the unit, through the pre-punched holes in the top and side panels (four screws per side).
- Repeat these steps for the remaining damper hood, if applicable.

Figure 95. Powered exhaust damper hood, open



# **A**ATTENTION

# Câblage et Mise à la Terre Appropriés Champs Obligatoires!

Le non-respect du code pourrait entraîner la mort ou grave blessure. Tout le câblage sur le terrain DOIT être effectué par des personnes qualifiées personnel. Terrain mal installé et mis à la terre le câblage pose des risques de FIRE et d'ÉLECTROCUTION. À evitez ces risques, vous devez suivre les exigences pour l'installation et la mise à la terre du câblage de terrain comme décrit dans NEC et vos codes électriques locaux/étatiques/nationaux.

An overall dimensional layout for the standard field installed wiring entrance into the unit is illustrated in the "Utility Connections," p. 76 section. To confirm that the units supply power wiring is properly sized and installed, refer to the NEC guidelines as well as state and local codes for conformance.

Verify that the power supply available is compatible with the units nameplate ratings. The available supply power must be within 10 percent of the rated voltage stamped on the nameplate. Use only copper conductors to connect the power supply to the unit.

# **Field Installed Power Wiring**

## **AWARNING**

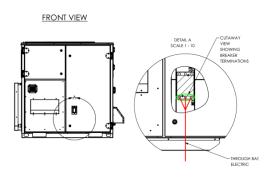
# Proper Field Wiring and Grounding Required!

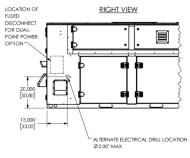
Failure to follow code could result in death or serious injury. All field wiring MUST be performed by qualified personnel. Improperly installed and grounded field wiring poses FIRE and ELECTROCUTION hazards. To avoid these hazards, you MUST follow requirements for field wiring installation and grounding as described in NEC and your local/state/national electrical codes.



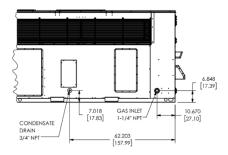
# **Utility Connections**

Figure 96. OAB utility connections, in. (cm)





LEFT VIEW



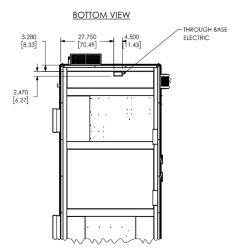
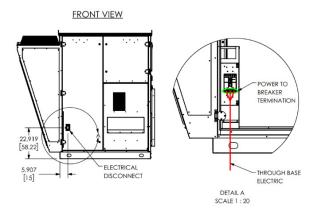
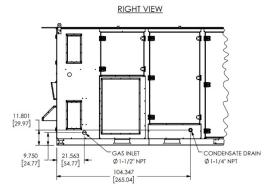
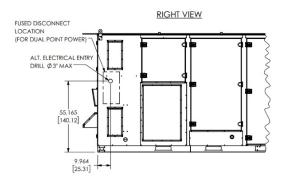


Figure 97. OAN utility connections, in. (cm)







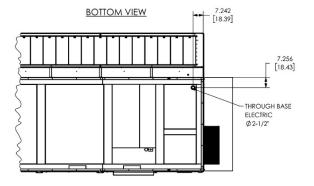




Figure 98. OADG utility connections, in. (cm)

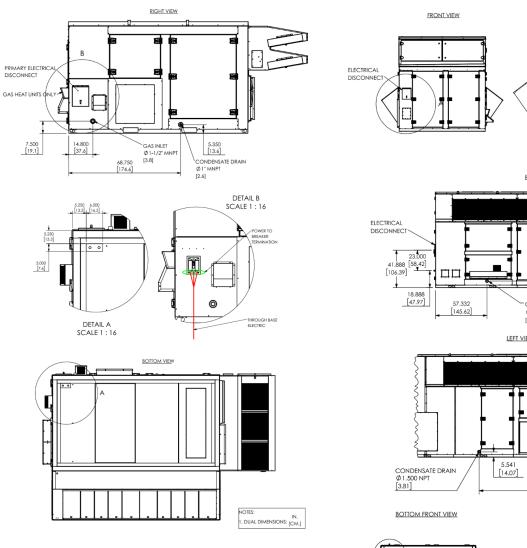
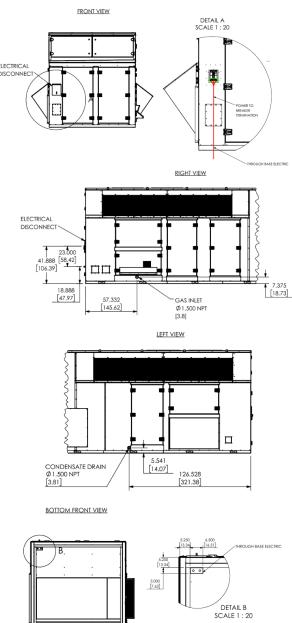


Figure 99. OANG utility connections, in. (cm)





# **Horizon Water Source Heat Pump Field Connection Instructions**

The following instructions illustrate the field connections for water lines on a typical Horizon™ water source heat pump unit.

Water source heat pump units will be installed on curbs with a pipe chase section attached (as shown in Figure 100, p. 78).

Figure 100. Typical water source heat pump cabinet

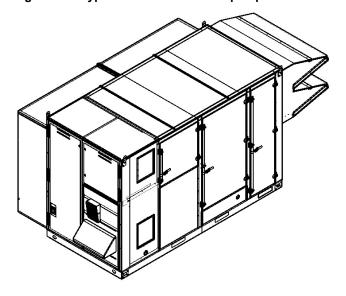
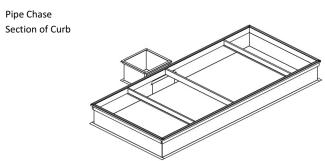


Figure 101. Typical water source heat pump unit curb



 Open the doors on the water source heat pump cabinet section to access the coils and the pipe chase panel cover (see Figure 103, p. 78 for a view of the pipe chase panel cover located on the floor of the cabinet section beneath the center drain pan).

Figure 102. Rear isometric view (doors hidden for clarity)

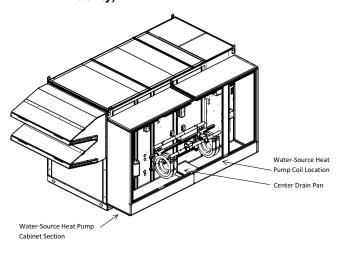
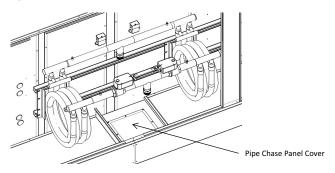


Figure 103. Pipe chase panel cover



- Remove the hex head sheet metal screws from the center drain pan (do not discard) to access the pipe chase panel cover.
- Remove the hex head sheet metal screws from the pipe chase panel cover for access to the pipe chase and discard the cover.

**Note:** If water lines will not be entering the cabinet section through the pipe chase, contractor must field-cut holes and the pipe chase panel cover can remain in place.

- 4. Cut required holes (size varies depending on unit size and type of pipe gasket used) in the center drain pan for pipe entry. Reinstall the center drain pan, insert pipe, and seal as necessary to prevent water leakage around drain pan/ pipes.
- Connect the water lines to the NPT external connections (there is a water in and a water out connection per unit).
   See Table 13, p. 79 for specific water line sizes per cabinet and tonnage.

The water out line will contain a factory installed ball valve with actuator. See Figure 104, p. 79 for details (coil size and style will vary depending on the tonnage of each unit).

Figure 104. Coil connection detail

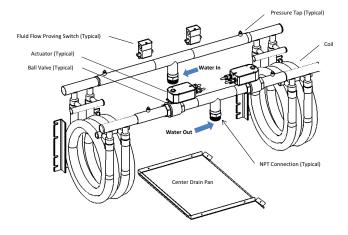


Table 13. WSHP water connection sizes

| Cabinet Size | Tonnage | Connection Size (in., MNPT) |
|--------------|---------|-----------------------------|
| OAB          | 3-6     | 1.0                         |
| OAB          | 7-9     | 2.0                         |
| OADG         | 10-15   | 2.0                         |
| OADG         | 17-20   | 2.5                         |
| OAN          | 30      | 2.0                         |
| OAN          | 35-60   | 2.5                         |

# IF Heater Air Inlet Hood and Flue Assembly Instructions for Outdoor Installations

Unit is shipped with the IF heater air inlet hood, flue cover, and flue stowed in the blower compartment.

**Note:** Instructions shown for one unit model, however similar installation for flue cover, flue, and heater air inlet hood applies to all models.

Important: Assemble the flue to the heater and the inlet hood and flue cover to the heater door before

attempting any unit start-up.

Figure 105. Flue cover



Figure 106. Flue

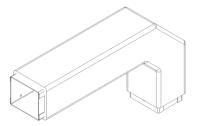


Figure 107. Wind screen (OAB cabinet only)

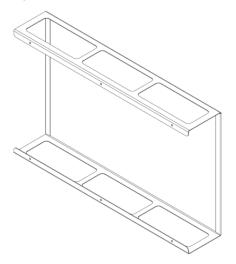
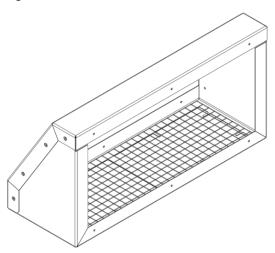


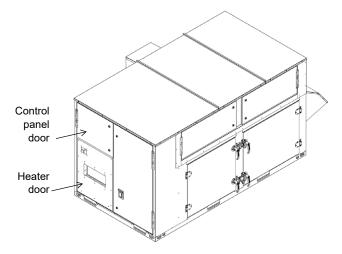
Figure 108. Heater air inlet hood



- 1. Open the blower compartment and remove the flue, flue cover, wind screen, and heater air inlet hood.
- 2. Open the control panel door and remove the heater door shown in Figure 109, p. 80.

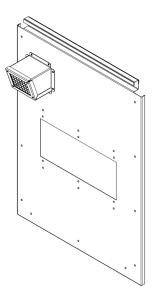


Figure 109. Typical layout of OAB cabinet with indirect fired gas heat



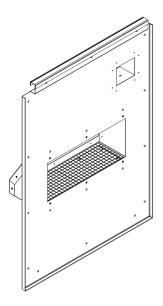
3. Attach the flue cover to the heater door using the provided stainless steel screws as shown in Figure 110, p. 80.

Figure 110. Heater door with flue cover attached



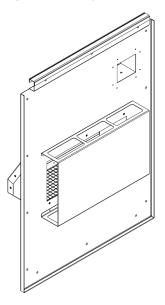
4. Attach the heater air inlet hood to the heater door using quantity (6) of the provided painted head screws as shown in Figure 111, p. 80.

Figure 111. Heater door with inlet and flue cover attached



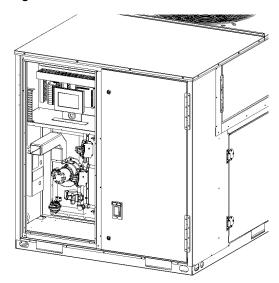
5. Attach the wind screen to the inside of the heater door using quantity (6) of the provided painted head screws as shown in Figure 112, p. 80.

Figure 112. Fully assembled heater door



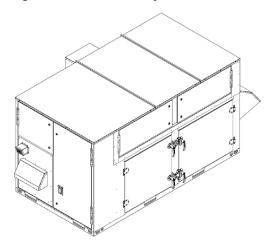
6. Attach the heater flue to the inducer blower on the heater and secure with (2) stainless steel self-drilling screws provided, as shown in Figure 113, p. 81.

Figure 113. OAB with flue attached



Install the heater door on the unit, as shown in Figure 114,
 p. 81, ensuring that the heater flue extends through the flue opening in the door.

Figure 114. OAB with fully assembled heater door



# **Venting of Furnace for Indoor Installations**

All furnace modules must be vented outside of the heated space. Vents must be designed and installed in accordance with ANSI Z223.1. Beyond an equivalent length of 15 feet, the extension may require power venting. Please refer to ANSI Z223.1.

Units with dual burners will require separate vents. Dual burners are included in any cabinet with a 700 to 1200 MBh gas heater section, as well as OAN cabinets with a 600 MBh gas heater section.

Horizon™ OAU units with gas heat are not designed for sealed combustion. The unit air intake must be open to atmosphere

for combustion air entering the unit. The unit should not be placed in a sealed room with ducted outside air for combustion.

The furnace must be connected to a vent complying with a recognized standard, or a masonry or concrete chimney lined with a material acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

The furnace modules will be classified in accordance with ANSI standards as follows:

- Category I Non-condensing appliance with negative vent pressure
- Category III Non-condensing appliance with positive vent pressure

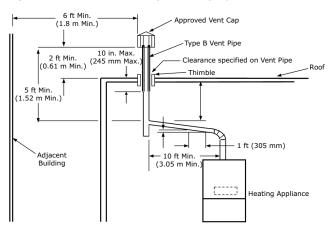
# Vertically Vented Furnaces — Category I (See Figure 115, p. 82)

- Use single wall or double wall (Type B) vent pipe of a diameter listed in the following table for the appropriate model.
- Maximize the height of the vertical run of vent pipe. A
  minimum of 5 ft. (1.5 m) of vertical pipe is required. The top
  of the vent pipe must extend at least 2 ft. (0.61 m) above
  the highest point on the roof. Use Listed Type B vent for
  external runs. An approved weatherproof vent cap must be
  installed on the vent termination.
- Horizontal runs must not exceed 75 percent of the vertical height of the vent pipe, up to a maximum of 10 ft. (3 m). Horizontal runs should be pitched upward 1/4 in./ft. (21 mm/m) and should be supported at 3 ft. (1 m) maximum intervals.
- 4. Design vent pipe runs to minimize the use of elbows. Each 90° elbow is equivalent to 5 ft. (1.5 m) of straight vent pipe.
- Vent pipe should not be run through unheated spaces. If such runs cannot be avoided, insulate the vent pipe to prevent condensation. Insulation should be a minimum of 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) thick foil faced fiberglass minimum of 1-1/2# density.
- Dampers must not be used in vent piping runs, as spillage of flue gases into the occupied space could result.
- Vent connectors serving Category 1 heaters must not be connected into any portion of a mechanical draft system operating under positive pressure.

| National Fuel Gas Code Venting Pipe Requirement |                  |     |     |
|---|------------------|-----|-----|
| Input Ratings Diameter Pipe to Use              |                  |     |     |
| Btu/h   | w                | in. | mm  |
| 75000 to 149999                                 | 21980 to 43959   | 5   | 126 |
| 150000 to 399999                                | 43960 to 117227  | 6   | 152 |
| 400000 to 500000                                | 117228 to 146535 | 7   | 178 |
| 500001 to 600000                                | 146536 to 175843 | 8   | 203 |

Note: Installers should follow both National Fuel Gas Code and local codes.

Figure 115. Vertical venting — Category I



# Horizontally Vented Furnaces — Category III (See Figure 116, p. 83)

Pressures in Category III venting systems are positive and therefore care must be taken to prevent flue products from entering the heated space. Use only venting materials and components that are UL-listed and approved for Category III venting systems.

# **AWARNING**

# **Proper Vent Pipe Required!**

Failure to follow instructions could result in death, serious injury, and property damage. Never use a pipe of a diameter other than specified! Never use PVC, ABS, or any other non-metallic pipe for venting!

# AVERTISSEMENT

## Tuyau de ventilation approprié requis!

Le non-respect de ces instructions peut causer le décès, des blessures graves ou des dégâts matériels. N'utilisez jamais un tuyau d'un diamètre autre que celui indiqué! N'utilisez jamais de tuyau en PVC, ABS ou d'autre tuyau non métallique pour la ventilation!!

# **WARNING**

#### Carbon Monoxide!

Failure to follow these instructions could result in Carbon Monoxide Poisoning (symptoms include grogginess, lethargy, inappropriate tiredness, or flu-like symptoms) which could result in death or serious injury. Never operate a unit without combustion air and flue gas piping in place. Each unit MUST have an individual vent pipe! Each unit MUST NOT be connected to other vent systems or to a chimney. Your venting system must not be blocked by any snow, snow drifts, or any foreign matter. Inspect your venting system to ensure adequate ventilation exists at all times!

# **AAVERTISSEMENT**

# Monoxyde de carbone!

Le non-respect de ces instructions peut résulter en un empoisonnement au monoxyde de carbone (parmi les symptômes figurent des étourdissement, une léthargie, une fatigue inhabituelle ou des symptômes grippaux) qui peut entraîner le décès ou des blessures graves. Ne faites jamais fonctionner une unité en l'absence d'une tuyauterie d'air de combustion et de conduits de fumée. Chaque unité doit IMPÉRATIVEMENT être équipée d'un tuyau de ventilation qui lui est propre! Chaque unité NE DOIT PAS être raccordée à d'autres systèmes de ventilation ou à une cheminée. Notre système de ventilation ne doit pas être bloqué par de la neige, des congères ou tout autre corps étranger. Inspectez votre système de ventilation pour garantir que la ventilation est appropriée en tout temps!

All vent pipe joints must be sealed to prevent leakage. Follow the instructions provided with the approved venting materials. Vent pipe shall be sized as follows:

| Input Ratings    |                 | Diameter Pipe to Use |     |
|------------------|-----------------|----------------------|-----|
| Btu/h            | w               | in.                  | mm  |
| 75000 to 149999  | 21980 to 43958  | 5                    | 126 |
| 150000 to 400000 | 43960 to 117228 | 6                    | 152 |

The total equivalent length of vent pipe must not exceed 50 ft. (15.25 m). Equivalent length is the total length of straight sections, plus 5 ft. (1.52 m) for each 90° elbow and 2.5 ft. (0.76 m) for each 45° elbow.

The vent system must also be installed to prevent collection of condensate. Pitch horizontal pipe runs downward 1/4 in./ft. (21 mm/m) toward the outlet to permit condensate drainage. Insulate vent pipe exposed to cold air or routed through unheated areas. Insulate vent pipe runs longer than 10 ft. (3 m). Insulation should be a minimum of 1/2 inch (12 mm) thick foil faced fiberglass of 1-1/2# density. Maintain 6 inch (152 mm) clearance between vent pipe and combustible materials

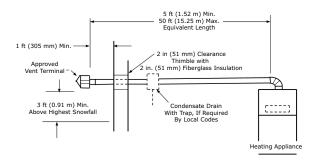
An approved Breidert Type L, Field Starkap or equivalent vent cap must be provided. Vent cap inlet diameter must be the same as the vent pipe diameter. The vent terminal must be at least 12 inch (305 mm) from the exterior wall that it passes through to prevent degradation of building material by flue gases. The vent terminal must be located at least 12 inch (305 mm) above grade, or in snow areas, at least 3 ft. (1 m) above snow line to prevent blockage. Additionally, the vent terminal must be installed with a minimum horizontal clearance of 4 ft. (1.2 m) from electric meters, gas meters, regulators or relief equipment.

Through-the-wall vents shall not terminate over public walkways or over an area where condensate or vapor could create a nuisance or hazard. Provide vent termination clearances to building or structure features as follows:



| Structure                            | Minimum Clearance          |  |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|--|
|                                      | 4 ft. (1.2 m) Below        |  |
| Door, Window or Gravity Inlet        | 4 ft. (1.2 m) Horizontally |  |
|                                      | 1 ft. (305 mm) Above       |  |
| Forced Air Inlet within 10 ft. (3 m) | 3 ft. (0.91 m) Above       |  |
| Adjoining Building or Parapet        | 6 ft. (1.8 m)              |  |
| Adjacent Public Walkways             | 7 ft. (2.1 m) Above Grade  |  |

Figure 116. Horizontal venting — category III



# **Hot Water Connection Size and Location**

Figure 117. OADG water inlet and outlet, in. (cm)

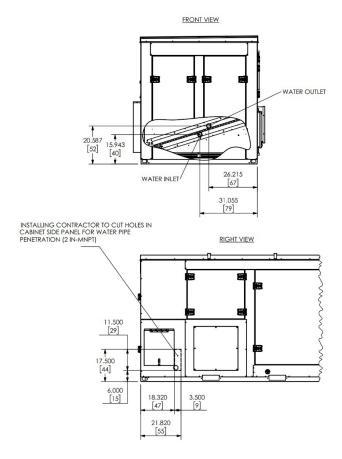
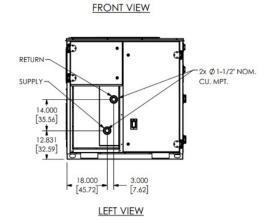


Figure 118. OAB water inlet and outlet, in. (cm)



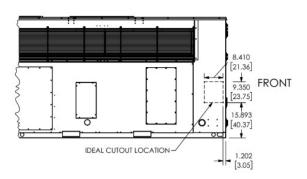
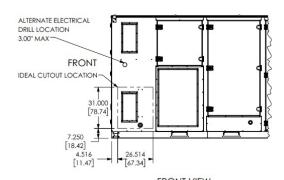


Figure 119. OAN water inlet and outlet, in. (cm)

**RIGHT VIEW** 



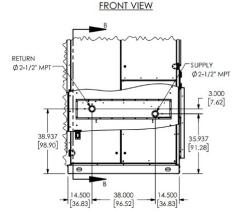
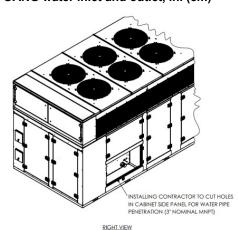
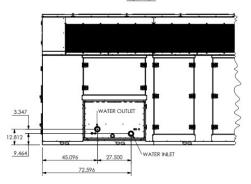


Figure 120. OANG water inlet and outlet, in. (cm)





# **UV Light Information**

#### General

This appliance may contain an optional UV-C Lamp. When a UV-C Lamp is present the unit will have markings on the outside indicating such and the whole of this UV Light section applies.

Read the "UV-C Lamp Maintenance," p. 84 instructions before opening the appliance.

#### Installation

If a field installed UV-C Lamp is going to be used, only a factory specified UV-C Germicidal Lamp System is approved for use. Consult the approved equipment list.

#### Use

Do not operate UV-C Lamps outside of the appliance.Doors and access panels bearing the ultraviolet radiation hazard symbol which may have UV-C spectral irradiance greater than 1.7 µW/cm2 are provided with an interlock switch to interrupt the power to the UV-C Lamps for your safety. Do not over-ride. Appliances that are obviously damaged must not be operated. Unintended use of the appliance or damage to the housing may result in the escape of dangerous UV-C radiation. UV-C radiation may, even in small doses, cause harm to the eyes and skin.

# **UV-C Lamp Maintenance**

Precautions are to be taken when replacing UV-C emitters and starters, if applicable. The appliance must be disconnected from the power supply before replacing the UV-C Lamp. Before replacement of UV-C Lamps refer to the list of approved replacement parts provided. UV-C Barriers bearing the Ultraviolet Radiation hazard symbol should not be removed.

# Approved equipment

| Brand        | Part Type     | Model Series | Technical Data                |
|--------------|---------------|--------------|-------------------------------|
| UV Resources | Light fixture | DEF Series   | 120 to 277 Vac,<br>50/60Hz    |
| UV Resources | Bulb          | DFL Series   | T5 diameter,<br>medium bi-pin |

# **Main Unit Power**

# WARNING

#### **Hazardous Voltage!**

Failure to disconnect power before servicing could result in death or serious injury. Disconnect all electric power, including remote disconnects before servicing. Follow proper lockout/tagout procedures to ensure the power can not be inadvertently energized. Verify that no power is present with a voltmeter.



# **A**AVERTISSEMENT

# Risque d'électrocution!

Le non-respect de cette consigne peut entraîner des blessures graves, voire mortelles. Avant toute intervention, coupez l'alimentation électrique, y compris aux sectionneurs à distance. Suivez scrupuleusement les procédures de verrouillage/mise hors service préconisées pour empêcher tout rétablissement accidentel de l'alimentation électrique.

#### NOTICE

# **Use Copper Conductors Only!**

Failure to use copper conductors could result in equipment damage as unit terminals are not designed to accept other types of conductors.

# **Standard Wiring**

#### **AWARNING**

# Proper Field Wiring and Grounding Required!

Failure to follow code could result in death or serious injury. All field wiring MUST be performed by qualified personnel. Improperly installed and grounded field wiring poses FIRE and ELECTROCUTION hazards. To avoid these hazards, you MUST follow requirements for field wiring installation and grounding as described in NEC and your local/state/national electrical codes.

#### **A**ATTENTION

# Câblage et Mise à la Terre Appropriés Champs Obligatoires!

Le non-respect du code pourrait entraîner la mort ou grave blessure. Tout le câblage sur le terrain DOIT être effectué par des personnes qualifiées personnel. Terrain mal installé et mis à la terre le câblage pose des risques de FIRE et d'ÉLECTROCUTION. À evitez ces risques, vous devez suivre les exigences pour l'installation et la mise à la terre du câblage de terrain comme décrit dans NEC et vos codes électriques locaux/étatiques/nationaux.

The electrical service must be protected from over current and short circuit conditions in accordance with NEC requirements. Protection devices must be sized according to the electrical data on the nameplate.

 Complete the units power wiring connections onto either; the main terminal block HTB1 inside the unit control panel, the factory mounted non-fused disconnect switch (UCD) or circuit breaker (UCB), or the electric heat non-fused disconnect switch. Refer to the customer connection diagram that shipped with the unit for specific termination points. 2. Provide proper grounding for the unit in accordance with local and national codes.

Use the following checklist in conjunction with the checklist in "General Unit Requirements," p. 72 to ensure that the unit is properly installed and ready for operation.

| Verify that the correct size and number of filters are in place.   |
|--|
| Inspect the interior of the unit for tools and debris and install all panels in preparation for starting the unit.   |
| Check all electrical connections for tightness and point of termination accuracy.  |
| Verify condenser airflow is unobstructed.  |
| Verify that the condenser and indoor fans turn freely without rubbing and are properly tightened on the shafts.  |
| Check motor mounting bolts and inlet cone for tightness. Free spin wheel by hand to check for proper alignment of motor, wheel, and inlet cone. Record motor nameplate amps at unit-rated voltage. |
| Check proper indoor fan wheel rotation. Wheel housing will be marked to indicate direction of proper rotation.   |
| With access doors closed and secured, operate blower at 100 percent speed. Check amp readout of amps output to   |

# Voltage Imbalance

motor amp capacity.

## **AWARNING**

indoor fan at VFD display to confirm operation within

#### **Live Electrical Components!**

Failure to follow all electrical safety precautions when exposed to live electrical components could result in death or serious injury. When it is necessary to work with live electrical components, have a qualified licensed electrician or other individual who has been properly trained in handling live electrical components perform these tasks.

## **AAVERTISSEMENT**

#### Composants électriques sous tension!

Le non-respect de toutes les consignes de sécurité lors de la manipulation de composants électriques sous tension peut entraîner des blessures graves, voire mortelles. S'il est nécessaire de travailler avec des composants électriques sous tension, demandez à un électricien qualifié et agréé ou à une autre personne ayant la formation nécessaire pour manipuler des composants électriques sous tension d'exécuter ces tâches.

Three phase electrical power to the unit must meet stringent requirements for the unit to operate properly. Measure each leg (phase-to-phase) of the power supply. Each reading must fall within the utilization range stamped on the unit nameplate. If



any of the readings do not fall within the proper tolerances, notify the power company to correct this situation before operating the unit.

Excessive three phase voltage imbalance between phases will cause motors to overheat and eventually fail. The maximum allowable voltage imbalance is 2.0 percent. Measure and record the voltage between phases 1, 2, and 3 and calculate the amount of imbalance as follows:

% Voltage Imbalance = 
$$100 \text{ x} \cdot \frac{\text{AV - VD}}{\text{AV}}$$
 where;

V1, V2, V3 = Line Voltage Readings

VD = Line Voltage reading that deviates the farthest from the average voltage.

Example: If the voltage readings of the supply power measured 221, 230, and 227, the average volts would be:

$$\frac{221 + 230 + 227}{3} = 226 \text{ Avg.}$$

VD (reading farthest from average) = 221

The percentage of Imbalance equals:

$$100 \times \frac{226 - 221}{226} = 2.2\%$$

The 2.2 percent imbalance in this example exceeds the maximum allowable imbalance of 2.0 percent. This much imbalance between phases can equal as much as a 20 percent current imbalance with a resulting increase in motor winding temperatures that will decrease motor life. If the voltage imbalance is over 2.0 percent, notify the proper agencies to correct the voltage problem before operating this equipment.

# **Electrical Phasing (Three-Phase Motors)**

#### **AWARNING**

# **Live Electrical Components!**

Failure to follow all electrical safety precautions when exposed to live electrical components could result in death or serious injury. When it is necessary to work with live electrical components, have a qualified licensed electrician or other individual who has been properly trained in handling live electrical components perform these tasks.

# **AAVERTISSEMENT**

# Composants électriques sous tension!

Le non-respect de toutes les consignes de sécurité lors de la manipulation de composants électriques sous tension peut entraîner des blessures graves, voire mortelles. S'il est nécessaire de travailler avec des composants électriques sous tension, demandez à un électricien qualifié et agréé ou à une autre personne ayant la formation nécessaire pour manipuler des composants électriques sous tension d'exécuter ces tâches.

All internal 3-phase motors are internally connected for proper rotation when the incoming power supply is phased A to L1, B to L2, and C to L3. Proper incoming electrical power supply phasing can be determined and corrected before full start-up by using the factory installed power phase monitor (PHM). Units with multiple sources of power will have a phase monitor for each power circuit. In addition to an alarm indication for the phase monitor, an alarm will also be displayed on the TD-7 display for the main unit controller (if equipped). For additional information on how to determine the alarm indicators for the phase monitor or other protections of the phase monitor device, see "Power Phase Monitor," p. 25.

If the factory installed phase monitor indicates improper phasing when power is applied to the unit, turn off the unit main breaker/disconnect (if installed), turn off power to the incoming supply power feed, switch the phasing, then restore the incoming power to the unit. Verify that the phase monitor shows a correct phasing.

#### **Compressor Crankcase Heaters**

# WARNING

# **Live Electrical Components!**

Failure to follow all electrical safety precautions when exposed to live electrical components could result in death or serious injury. When it is necessary to work with live electrical components, have a qualified licensed electrician or other individual who has been properly trained in handling live electrical components perform these tasks.

## **A**AVERTISSEMENT

#### Composants électriques sous tension!

Le non-respect de toutes les consignes de sécurité lors de la manipulation de composants électriques sous tension peut entraîner des blessures graves, voire mortelles. S'il est nécessaire de travailler avec des composants électriques sous tension, demandez à un électricien qualifié et agréé ou à une autre personne ayant la formation nécessaire pour manipuler des composants électriques sous tension d'exécuter ces tâches.



To prevent injury or death from electrocution, it is the responsibility of the technician to recognize this hazard and use extreme care when performing service procedures with the electrical power energized.

Each compressor shall be equipped with a crankcase heater. The proper operation of the crankcase heater is important to maintain an elevated compressor oil temperature during the **Off** cycle to reduce oil foaming during compressor starts. Oil foaming occurs when refrigerant condenses in the compressor and mixes with the oil. In lower ambient conditions, refrigerant migration to the compressor could increase.

When the compressor starts, the sudden reduction in crankcase pressure causes the liquid refrigerant to boil rapidly causing the oil to foam. This condition could damage compressor bearings due to reduced lubrication and could cause compressor mechanical failures.

Before initial start-up, or if main power has been off for an extended period of time, compressor crankcase heater(s) should be operated for a minimum of 8 hours prior to compressor operation. With main power OFF, remove jumper between OAUTS terminals 9 and 10 (E-Stop). Turn main power to energize crankcase heater(s). At end of warm up period turn main power off, install 9-10 jumper, turn main power on, and resume normal operation.

Following crankcase heater warm-up, turn main power disconnect off, and install jumper on E-Stop terminals 9 and 10. Turn Main disconnect **On**.

# Main Unit Display and ReliaTel™ Controls

When first powered **On**, the controls perform self-diagnostic initialization to check that all internal controls are functional. The status LED located on the main unit display and the Liteport LED located on the RTRM module is turned **On** within one second of power-up if internal operation is okay.

# **Field-Installed Control Wiring**

## **AWARNING**

# Proper Field Wiring and Grounding Required!

Failure to follow code could result in death or serious injury. All field wiring MUST be performed by qualified personnel. Improperly installed and grounded field wiring poses FIRE and ELECTROCUTION hazards. To avoid these hazards, you MUST follow requirements for field wiring installation and grounding as described in NEC and your local/state/national electrical codes.

# **A**ATTENTION

# Câblage et Mise à la Terre Appropriés Champs Obligatoires!

Le non-respect du code pourrait entraîner la mort ou grave blessure. Tout le câblage sur le terrain DOIT être effectué par des personnes qualifiées personnel. Terrain mal installé et mis à la terre le câblage pose des risques de FIRE et d'ÉLECTROCUTION. À evitez ces risques, vous devez suivre les exigences pour l'installation et la mise à la terre du câblage de terrain comme décrit dans NEC et vos codes électriques locaux/étatiques/nationaux.

An overall layout of the various control options available with the required number of conductors for each control device is illustrated in Figure 121, p. 89.

**Note:** All field wiring must conform to NEC guidelines as well as state and local codes.

#### **Control Power Transformer**

## WARNING

# **Hazardous Voltage!**

Failure to disconnect power before servicing could result in death or serious injury. Disconnect all electric power, including remote disconnects before servicing. Follow proper lockout/tagout procedures to ensure the power can not be inadvertently energized. Verify that no power is present with a voltmeter.

## **AAVERTISSEMENT**

# Risque d'électrocution!

Le non-respect de cette consigne peut entraîner des blessures graves, voire mortelles. Avant toute intervention, coupez l'alimentation électrique, y compris aux sectionneurs à distance. Suivez scrupuleusement les procédures de verrouillage/mise hors service préconisées pour empêcher tout rétablissement accidentel de l'alimentation électrique.

The 24-volt control power transformers are to be used only with the accessories called out in this manual. Transformers rated greater than 50 VA are equipped with internal circuit breakers. If a circuit breaker trips, turn **Off** all power to the unit before attempting to reset it.

The transformers are located in the control panel. The circuit breaker is located on the left side of the transformers and can be reset by pressing in on the black reset button.

# **Controls Using 24 Vac**

# **AWARNING**

# Hazardous Voltage!

Failure to disconnect power before servicing could result in death or serious injury. Disconnect all electric power, including remote disconnects before servicing. Follow proper lockout/tagout procedures to ensure the power can not be inadvertently energized. Verify that no power is present with a voltmeter.

## **AAVERTISSEMENT**

# Risque d'électrocution!

Le non-respect de cette consigne peut entraîner des blessures graves, voire mortelles. Avant toute intervention, coupez l'alimentation électrique, y compris aux sectionneurs à distance. Suivez scrupuleusement les procédures de verrouillage/mise hors service préconisées pour empêcher tout rétablissement accidentel de l'alimentation électrique.

## NOTICE

# **Use Copper Conductors Only!**

Failure to use copper conductors could result in equipment damage as unit terminals are not designed to accept other types of conductors.

Before installing any connecting wiring, refer to the below table for AC conductor sizing guidelines:

- 1. Use copper conductors unless otherwise specified.
- 2. Ensure that the AC control wiring between the controls and the units termination point does not exceed three (3) ohms/conductor for the length of the run.

**Note:** Resistance in excess of 3 ohms per conductor may cause component failure due to insufficient AC voltage supply.

- 3. Be sure to check all loads and conductors for grounds, shorts, and mis-wiring.
- 4. Do not run the AC low-voltage wiring in the same conduit with the high-voltage power wiring.

Table 14. 24 Vac conductors

| Distance from Unit to Control | Recommended Wire Size |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 000 to 460 ft.                | 18 gauge              |
| 000 to 140 m                  | 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup>  |
| 461 to 732 ft.                | 16 gauge              |
| 104 to 223 m                  | 1 mm²                 |

# Controls Using DC Analog Input/Output (Standard Low Voltage Multiconductor Wire)

#### WARNING

## **Hazardous Voltage!**

Failure to disconnect power before servicing could result in death or serious injury. Disconnect all electric power, including remote disconnects before servicing. Follow proper lockout/tagout procedures to ensure the power can not be inadvertently energized. Verify that no power is present with a voltmeter.

#### **AAVERTISSEMENT**

#### Risque d'électrocution!

Le non-respect de cette consigne peut entraîner des blessures graves, voire mortelles. Avant toute intervention, coupez l'alimentation électrique, y compris aux sectionneurs à distance. Suivez scrupuleusement les procédures de verrouillage/mise hors service préconisées pour empêcher tout rétablissement accidentel de l'alimentation électrique.

Before installing any connecting wiring between the unit and components utilizing a DC analog input\output signal, find the electrical access locations provided on the unit.

 Below table lists the conductor sizing guidelines that must be followed when interconnecting the DC binary output devices and the system components utilizing a DC analog input/output signal to the unit.

**Note:** Resistance in excess of 2.5 ohms per conductor can cause deviations in the accuracy of the controls.

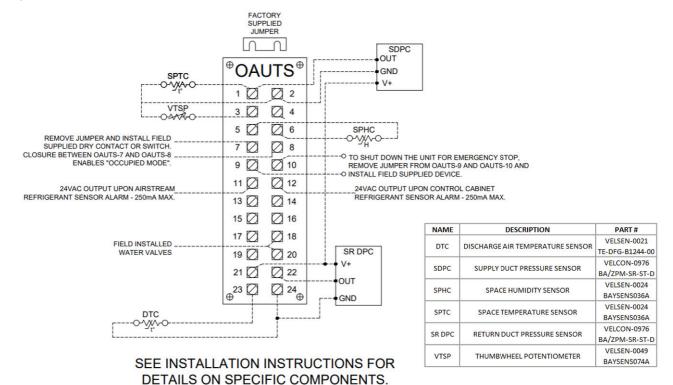
- Ensure that the wiring between controls and the units termination point does not exceed 2.5 ohms/conductor for the length of the run.
- Do not run the electrical wires transporting DC signals in or around conduit housing high voltage wires.

# **DC Conductors**

Table 15. Zone sensor module wiring

| Distance from Unit to Control | Recommended Wire Size |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|
| 000 to 150 ft.                | 22 gauge              |
| 0 to 45.7 m                   | 0.33 mm <sup>2</sup>  |
| 151 to 240 ft.                | 20 gauge              |
| 46 to 73.1 m                  | 0.50 mm <sup>2</sup>  |
| 241 to 385 ft.                | 18 gauge              |
| 73.5 to 117.3 m               | 0.75 mm <sup>2</sup>  |
| 386 to 610 ft.                | 16 gauge              |
| 117.7 to 185.9 m              | 1.3 mm <sup>2</sup>   |
| 611 to 970 ft.                | 14 gauge              |
| 186.2 to 295.7 m              | 2.0 mm <sup>2</sup>   |

Figure 121. OAUTS connection



# **Factory-Provided Sensors**

A discharge temperature sensor (VELSEN-0021) will be factory-provided for field installation in the supply duct. See Figure 138, p. 112 for installation instructions.

If space control is selected, a combination space temperature/ humidity sensor (BAYSENS036A) will be factory-provided for field installation in the space. See Figure 136, p. 110 for installation instructions.

If multi-zone VAV control is selected, a static pressure sensor (VELCON-0976) will be factory-provided for field installation in the supply duct or space. See Figure 137, p. 111 for installation instructions.

If modulating OA/RA dampers w/economizer and an exhaust fan are selected, a duct static pressure sensor (VELCON-0976) will be factory-provided for field installation in the return duct. See Figure 137, p. 111 for installation instructions.

If the unit is selected with smoke detectors for supply/return/both, a smoke detector sensor assembly (VELCON-0281) will be provided for field installation (select unit configurations are factory installed). See Figure 142, p. 116 and Figure 143, p. 116 for wiring installation instructions.



# Start-Up

Before starting up the unit, scan the QR code sticker on the side of the unit by the ETL label to complete the digital start-up form. Once completed, the start-up form will automatically be submitted. If you cannot access the QR code, please use this link to access the form - https://horizonstartup.kccmfg.com.

# Indirect Fired Gas Heating Start-Up

# **▲** WARNING

#### **Hazardous Service Procedures!**

Failure to follow all precautions in this manual and on the tags, stickers, and labels could result in death or serious injury.

- Technicians, in order to protect themselves from potential electrical, mechanical, and chemical hazards, MUST follow precautions in this manual and on the tags, stickers, and labels, as well as the following instructions: Unless specified otherwise, disconnect all electrical power including remote disconnect and discharge all energy storing devices such as capacitors before servicing. Follow proper lockout/tagout procedures to ensure the power can not be inadvertently energized. When necessary to work with live electrical components, have a qualified licensed electrician or other individual who has been trained in handling live electrical components perform these tasks.
- Do not attempt the following procedures until all electrical and gas connections to the unit have been completed and the outdoor air damper and evaporator fan operation have been verified and are operating correctly.

## **AAVERTISSEMENT**

# Procédures d'entretien dangereuses!

- Les techniciens, afin d'être protégés des éventuels risques électriques, mécaniques et chimiques, DOIVENT suivre les précautions contenues dans ce manuel, sur les étiquettes et les autocollants, ainsi que les instructions suivantes : Sauf indication contraire, coupez toute l'alimentation électrique y compris les disjoncteurs à distance et déchargez tous les dispositifs de stockage d'énergie comme les condensateurs avant l'entretien. Respectez les procédures de verrouillage et d'étiquetage appropriées pour éviter tout risque de remise sous tension accidentelle. S'il est nécessaire de travailler avec des composants électriques sous tension, demandez à un électricien qualifié et agréé ou à une autre personne ayant la formation nécessaire pour manipuler des composants électriques sous tension d'exécuter ces tâches.
- N'essayez pas de réaliser les procédures suivantes avant d'avoir effectué tous les raccordements en gaz et électricité sur l'unité, d'avoir inspecté le registre d'air extérieur et le ventilateur d'évaporateur et confirmé que leur fonctionnement est approprié.

#### Notes:

 This furnace module does not have a pilot. It is equipped with a direct spark ignition device that automatically lights the gas burner. DO NOT try to light burners by hand.

# **AWARNING**

## **Hazard of Explosion!**

Failure to follow proper safe leak test procedures could result in death or serious injury or equipment or property-only-damage. NEVER use an open flame to detect gas leaks. You MUST use a leak test solution for leak testing.

# **A**AVERTISSEMENT

# Risque d'explosion!

Le non-respect des procédures d'essai d'étanchéité sûres recommandées pourrait provoquer des accidents graves, voire mortels, ou des dommages matériels. Ne vérifiez JAMAIS la présence de fuites de gaz avec une flamme nue. Vous devez IMPÉRATIVEMENT utiliser une solution de test d'étanchéité pour vérifier l'étanchéité.

2. **BEFORE OPERATING**, leak test all gas piping up to heater gas valve. Smell around the unit area for gas. If gas is smelled, do **NOT** attempt to place heater in operation until source of gas leak is identified and corrected.



- Use only hand force to operate the gas control lever to the ON position. NEVER use tools. If lever does not operate by hand, replace gas valve prior to starting the unit. Forcing or attempting to repair the gas valve may result in fire or explosion.
- Do not attempt to operate unit, if there is indication that any part or control has been under water. Any control or component that has been under water must be replaced prior to trying to start the unit.

#### **Tools Required**

- Voltage Meter (μA)
- Amp Meter
- Gas Manometer (2)
- · Temperature Probe
- Small Refrigeration Screwdriver
- 5/16-inch Nut Driver
- 3/16-inch Allen Wrench
- 3/32-inch Allen Wrench
- 1/8-inch NPT Barbed Pressure Taps (3)
- 1/2-inch Open End Wrench

# **Start-Up Procedure**

#### 1. Check Inlet Gas Pressure

Check to ensure the gas pressure supplied to the unit is within the pressure requirement listed on the nameplate. **DO NOT** expose gas controls to pressures above 1/2 psi (14-in. WC). The gas supply line should be installed with an external manual shut-off and pressure tap.

2. Confirm Gas Flow at Unit

# **AWARNING**

## **Hazardous Voltage and Gas!**

Failure to turn off gas or disconnect power before servicing could result in an explosion or electrocution which could result in death or serious injury. Turn off the gas supply and disconnect all electric power, including remote disconnects, before servicing the unit. Follow proper lockout/tagout procedures to ensure the power can not be inadvertently energized.

## **A**AVERTISSEMENT

#### Tension dangereuse et présence de gaz!

Le non-respect de l'obligation de couper le gaz ou l'alimentation électrique avant de procéder à une opération d'entretien peut entraîner une explosion ou une électrocution pouvant résulter en des blessures graves, voire mortelles. Avant toute intervention sur l'unité, couper l'approvisionnement en gaz et l'ensemble de l'alimentation électrique, y compris les disjoncteurs à distance. Suivez scrupuleusement les procédures de verrouillage/mise hors service préconisées pour empêcher tout rétablissement accidentel de l'alimentation électrique.

Open door to unit vestibule housing the gas heater. Move gas control lever to **OFF** position. Remove 1/8-inch pressure taps (see Figure 124, p. 93) from both modulating and on-off sections of the split heater manifold. Install a barbed fitting in both 1/8-inch tapped holes for connection to individual gas manometers.

Note: There is a third 1/8-inch gas pressure tap located in the pipe connecting the main valve/regulator and modulating valve. Maximum pressure into modulating valve is 5-inch. The On-Off gas valve includes a regulator adjustment device that is located on the top of the valve. Use this device to regulate valve output to modulating valve as required.

Wait 5 minutes for any gas to clear. If you smell gas, see Step 1 and correct leak. If you do not smell gas or have corrected any leaks, go to Step 3.

# Burner Starting Sequence and Burner Ignition Figure 124, p. 93 illustrates indirect fired gas furnace

Figure 124, p. 93 illustrates indirect fired gas furnace components.

#### 4. Main Gas Supply

Turn manual gas cock ON.

#### 5. Split Manifold High Fire and Burner Test

Open all manual gas valves. Turn power on at units main disconnect switch. Open gas supply manual shut-off valve. using unit display (or computer with Trane Tracer TU), proceed to system status display and override all compressor stages OFF, disable dehumidification, disable economizer mode, disable ERV. If two heaters are installed, test heating with split manifold first by overriding burner 2 OFF. Override heating output command to 100 percent if one heater is installed and to 49 percent if two heaters are installed. Override heat cool mode active to Heat. This will enable call for heat to split manifold heater. Depending on outdoor air temperature, at time of start-up, heater high limit temperature may be exceeded causing limit switch to trip. Limit switch is auto-reset. Limit switch must be jumpered out of the circuit if OA temperature dictates.

With limit switch closed, the draft inducer will run on high speed for 10 seconds for proof of high and low airflow switch closure, then begin a 30-second pre-purge period. At the end of the pre-purge the direct spark will be energized and On-Off gas valve will open for a 5-second ignition trial. Following successful ignition, the inducer remains on high for 10-second flame stabilization, followed by 30-second warm up. Should the flame go out or the burner fail to light, an ignition retry will initiate following a 15-second inter-purge period.

Following successful ignition, manifold pressure should be 1.2-inch WC during the warm-up period. The manifold pressure will rise to 3.5-inch WC at 100 percent firing rate. Following these sequences to check low fire gas pressure for modulating section, reduce heating output command to 0 percent. Inducer speed will reduce to low speed. Correct gas pressure for modulating manifold section of heater at 0 percent output signal or low fire will be 0.4-inch WC. For



#### Start-Up

modulating sections, the outlet gas pressure from main/regulator valve into the modulating valve is 5-inch WC.

Main On-Off valves in 1/2-inch gas line require 3/32-inch Allen wrench to adjust outlet gas pressure. Valves in 3/4-inch gas line require flat blade screwdriver to adjust outlet gas pressure. Following these sequences, inducer speed will reduce to low speed and will now be speed-controlled by the heater controller based on gas input to burners.

With heating command at 100 percent and with a single split manifold heater installed, the On-Off section of the heater will require the modulating section to prove ON before the On-Off section will enable. Inducer speed high at all times the On-Off section is in ignition sequence or firing. On-Off section sequence includes a 1-second ignition pre-purge followed by 4-second ignition trial. Ignition or flame failure will be followed by 30-second interpurge for two ignition retry then 5-minute lockout period if both retry attempts fail. Correct manifold gas pressure for On-Off heater section is 3.5-inch WC.

For units including an additional separate On-Off heater, set heat command output to 49 percent to run modulating heater start-up. When complete with modulating heater start-up, increase heat output command to 100 percent to start-up the second heater.

## High Fire and Low Fire Adjustment

The modulating valve has two buttons and a communication LED. The buttons are used to achieve the desired high and low fire settings, see Figure 122, p. 92

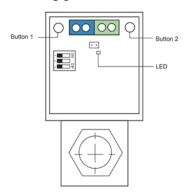
#### **High Fire**

- 1. To enter high fire setting mode, press and hold button #1 until the LED is solid red, then release.
- 2. The valve is now in high fire mode.
- Buttons #1 and #2 are used to achieve the desired setting.
- 4. Press and hold button #1 to increase gas flow.
- 5. Press and hold button #2 to decrease gas flow.
- 6. To save the setting, simultaneously hold button #1 and #2 until the LED turns off.

#### **Low Fire**

- 1. To enter low fire setting mode, press and hold button #2 until the LED is flashing red, then release.
- 2. The valve is now in low fire setting.
- Repeat steps 3-6 above.

Figure 122. Modulating gas valve



#### Failure to Ignite

- On the initial start-up, or after unit has been off long periods of time, the first ignition trial may be unsuccessful due to need to purge air from manifold at start-up.
- If ignition does not occur on the first trial, the gas and spark are shut-off by the ignition control and the control enters an inter-purge period of 15 seconds, during which the draft inducer continues to run.
- At the end of the inter-purge period, another trial for ignition will be initiated.
- Control will initiate up to three ignition trials on a call for heat before lockout of control occurs.
- Control can be brought out of lockout by cycling call for heat at the main unit display.

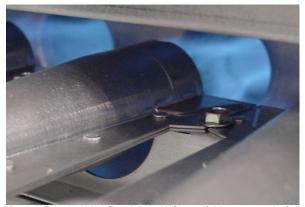
Prior to completing the start-up, check the appearance of the main burner flame. See Figure 123, p. 93 for flame characteristics of properly adjusted natural gas systems.

| Pressure Settings            |          |          |  |
|------------------------------|----------|----------|--|
| Fuel Type                    | NG       | LP       |  |
| Unit Inlet (in.)             | 11 to 14 | 10 to 14 |  |
| Modulating Valve Inlet (in.) | 5.0      | 10.0     |  |
| Manifold (in.)               | 3.5      | 8.0      |  |
| Low Fire (in.)               | 0.4      | 0.8      |  |
| High Fire (in.)              | 3.5      | 8.0      |  |

Figure 123. Flame characteristics of properly-adjusted natural gas systems



Burner flame at start-up: 1.2-in. WC manifold pressure draft inducer — high speed



Burner flame at high fire: 3.5-in. WC manifold pressure draft inducer — high speed

#### Main Burner Flame

 The burner flame should be predominately blue in color and well defined and centered at the tube entry as shown in Figure 123, p. 93 above. Distorted flame or yellow tipping of natural gas flame, or a long yellow flame on propane, may be caused by lint and dirt accumulation inside burner or at burner ports, at air inlet between burner and manifold pipe, or debris in the main

Figure 124. Indirect fired gas furnace components

- burner orifice. Soft brush or vacuum clean affected areas.
- Poorly defined, substantially yellow flames, or flames that appear lazy, indicate poor air supply to burners or excessive burner input. Verify gas supply type and manifold pressure with rating plate.
- Poor air supply can be caused by obstructions or blockage in heat exchanger tubes or vent discharge pipe. Inspect and clean as necessary to eliminate blockage. Vacuum any dirt or loose debris. Clean heat exchanger tubes with stiff brush. Poor flame characteristics can also be caused by flue gas recirculation into combustion air supply. If surrounding buildings or prevailing winds cause recirculation, a flue extension may be required to prevent recirculation. Contact manufacturer prior to making any flue adjustments.
- Reduced air delivery can also be the result of inducer fan blade slippage, dirt accumulation in the fan blade or low voltage to draft inducer motor. Inspect draft fan assembly and be sure fan blade is secure to motor shaft. Check line voltage to heater.

#### 4. Flame Sensor Current Check

#### NOTICE

# Meter Damage!

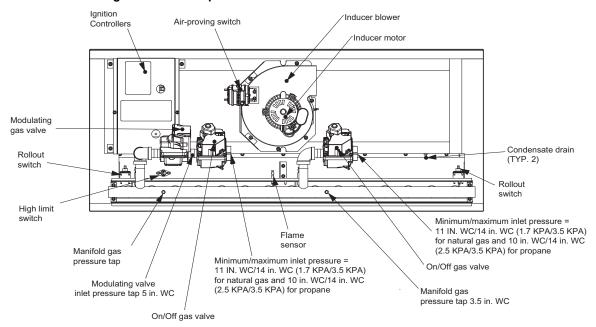
Measuring voltage with meter connect to a circuit could result in meter damage. Do NOT measure voltage with meter connected to a circuit.

Flame current is the current which passes through the flame from the sensor to ground. A flame signal of 0.5 to 1.0 microamp ( $\mu$ A) is marginal. For dependable operation, a flame signal of greater than 1.0  $\mu$ A is required. To measure flame current, connect a meter capable of reading micro-amp current so the flame signal will be read thru the meters COM and  $\mu$ A connections. The meter should read greater than 1.0  $\mu$ A.

**Note:** If the meter reads below 0 on scale, meter leads are reversed; disconnect power and reconnect meter leads for proper polarity.



#### Figure 124. Indirect fired gas furnace components



# **Safety Controls**

Air Pressure Switch: An air pressure switch is provided as part of the control system to verify airflow through draft inducer by monitoring the difference in pressure between the draft inducer and the atmosphere. If sufficient negative pressure is not present, indicating lack of proper air movement through heat exchanger, the switch opens shutting off gas supply though the ignition control module. On units with two speed draft inducer operation, a dual air pressure switch is used, monitoring high and low speed pressures. The air pressure switches have fixed settings and are not adjustable.

Rollout Switch (Manual Reset): The furnace module is equipped with manual reset rollout switch(es) in the event of burner flame rollout. The switch will open on temperature rise and shut-off gas supply through the ignition control module. Flame rollout can be caused by insufficient airflow for the burner firing rate (high gas pressure), blockage of the vent system or in the heat exchanger. The furnace module should not be placed back in operation until the cause of rollout condition is identified and corrected. The rollout switch can be reset by pressing the button on top of the switch.

**High Limit Switch:** The furnace module is equipped with a fixed temperature high limit switch mounted on the vestibule panel that shuts off gas to the heater through the ignition control module in the event of reduced airflow over the heat exchanger tubes. Reduced airflow can be caused by indoor fan failure, dirty or blocked filters, or restriction of the air inlet or outlet to the unit. The high limit switch will automatically reset when the air temperature drops to approximately 30°F below the limit setpoint. Determine the cause of the reduced airflow and correct.



# **Maintenance**

Make sure all personnel are standing clear of the unit before proceeding. The system components will start when the power is applied.

# **Monthly Maintenance**

Before completing the following checks, turn the unit OFF and lock the main power disconnect switch open.

## **AWARNING**

# **Hazardous Voltage!**

Failure to disconnect power before servicing could result in death or serious injury. Disconnect all electric power, including remote disconnects before servicing. Follow proper lockout/tagout procedures to ensure the power can not be inadvertently energized. Verify that no power is present with a voltmeter.

# AAVERTISSEMENT

# Risque d'électrocution!

Le non-respect de cette consigne peut entraîner des blessures graves, voire mortelles. Avant toute intervention, coupez l'alimentation électrique, y compris aux sectionneurs à distance. Suivez scrupuleusement les procédures de verrouillage/mise hors service préconisées pour empêcher tout rétablissement accidentel de l'alimentation électrique.

#### **Filters**

Inspect return air filter monthly to confirm proper airflow. Dirty/clogged filters are a leading cause of poor heating and cooling performance. Filter replacement is dependent on the application environment and may require a more frequent replacement if the conditions are prone to cause build-up.

At a minimum, the filters should be replaced every three months. See "Horizon™ OAU Filter Guide," p. 108 for replacement filters.

## **Filter Installation**

Cabinet sizes OADG, OAN, and OANG ship with 2-inch permanent filters (mist eliminators) installed in the air inlet hood. The quantity of filters is determined by unit size. Access to the filters is through the hinged filter access panel on the air intake hood. In addition to the filters in the intake hood, there is a separate bank of filters accessible through the evaporator coil compartment door. Filter type, size, and quantity are determined by selected filter option and unit size. See "Horizon™ OAU Filter Guide," p. 108 for replacement filter information.

Note: Do not operate the unit without filters.

# Supply/Return Air Smoke Detector Maintenance

Airflow through the unit is affected by the amount of dirt and debris accumulated on the indoor coil and filters.

To insure that airflow through the unit is adequate for proper sampling by the return air smoke detector, complete adherence to the maintenance procedures, including recommended intervals between filter changes, and coil cleaning is required.

Periodic checks and maintenance procedures must be performed on the smoke detector to insure that it will function properly.

For detailed instructions concerning these checks and procedures, refer to the appropriate section(s) of the smoke detector installation and maintenance Instructions provided with the literature package for this unit.

# Cooling Season

- Check the units drain pans and condensate piping to ensure that there are no blockages. Additional details in "Condensate Drain," p. 96.
- Inspect the evaporator and condenser coils for dirt, bent fins, etc. If the coils appear dirty, clean them according to the instructions described in "Condenser Coil Cleaning," p. 96.
- Manually rotate the condenser fan(s) to ensure free movement and check motor bearings for wear. Verify that all of the fan mounting hardware is tight.
- Inspect the O/A-R/A damper hinges and pins to ensure that all moving parts are securely mounted. Keep the blades clean as necessary.
- Verify that all damper linkages move freely; lubricate with white grease, if necessary.
- Check supply fan motor bearings; repair or replace the motor as necessary.
- Check the fan shaft bearings for wear. Replace the bearings as necessary.
- · Verify that all wire terminal connections are tight.
- Remove any corrosion present on the exterior surfaces of the unit and repaint these areas.
- Generally inspect the unit for unusual conditions (e.g., loose access panels, leaking piping connections, etc.).
- Confirm that all retaining screws are reinstalled in the unit access panels once these checks are complete.
- Check the condition of the gasket around access doors.
   These gaskets must fit correctly and be in good condition to prevent air/water leaks.
- With the unit running, check and record the: ambient temperature; compressor suction and discharge pressures; superheat; Record this data on an operators maintenance log like the one shown in Table 16, p. 98. If



#### **Maintenance**

the operating pressures indicate a refrigerant shortage, measure the system superheat.

**Note:** Do not release refrigerant to the atmosphere! If adding or removing refrigerant is required, the service technician must comply with all federal, state and local laws.

# **Heating Season**

- Inspect the unit air filters. If necessary, clean or replace them.
- Check supply fan motor bearings; repair or replace the motor as necessary.
- Inspect both the main unit control panel and heat section control box for loose electrical components and terminal connections, as well as damaged wire insulation. Make any necessary repairs.
- Inspect and, if necessary, clean the unit flue passage and combustion air blower for proper exhaust.
- Check indirect fire gas heat exchanger for any corrosion or damage and verify the ignition system operates correctly.
- · Verify that the electric heat system operates properly.

#### **Condensate Drain**

Regular cleaning of the drain pan and condensate line will prevent debris collection and microbial growth from poor drainage. Build-up in the drain pan or p-trap would prevent adequate condensate removal impacting unit performance and can potentially cause water damage due to condensate accumulating within the unit.

To confirm proper condensate drain pipe setup, see "Condensate Drain Configuration," p. 72. If the unit is equipped with optional Condensate Overflow Switch, clear any debris or buildup at the stem of the switch during routine maintenance for proper function.

# **Condenser Coil Cleaning**

Regular coil maintenance, including annual cleaning, enhances the units operating efficiency by minimizing: compressor head pressure and amperage draw; evaporator water carryover; fan brake horsepower, due to increase static pressure losses; airflow reduction.

At least once each year, or more often if the unit is located in a dirty environment, clean the condenser coils using the instructions outlined below. Be sure to follow these instructions as closely as possible to avoid damaging the coils.

# Round Tube Plate Fin (RTPF) Coils

To clean refrigerant coils, use a soft brush and a sprayer (either a garden pump-up type or a high-pressure sprayer). A high-quality detergent is also required; suggested brands include SPREX A.C., OAKITE 161, OAKITE 166 and COILOX. If the detergent selected is strongly alkaline (pH value exceeds 8.5), add an inhibitor.

# **AWARNING**

#### **Hazardous Chemicals!**

Failure to follow all safety instructions below could result in death or serious injury. Coil cleaning agents can be either acidic or highly alkaline and can burn severely if contact with skin occurs. Handle chemical carefully and avoid contact with skin. ALWAYS wear Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) including goggles or face shield, chemical resistant gloves, boots, apron or suit as required. For personal safety refer to the cleaning agent manufacturer's Materials Safety Data Sheet and follow all recommended safe handling practices.

## **AAVERTISSEMENT**

# Produits chimiques dangereux!

Le non-respect de toutes les consignes de sécurité indiquées ci-après pourrait entraîner des blessures graves voire mortelles. Les agents de nettoyage pour serpentin peuvent être soit acides, soit fortement alcalins et peuvent entraîner des brûlures graves au contact de la peau. Manipulez les produits chimiques avec prudence et évitez tout contact avec la peau. Portez TOUJOURS un équipement de protection individuel (EPI), y compris des lunettes ou un masque facial, des gants résistant aux produits chimiques, des bottes, un tablier ou une combinaison conformément aux exigences. Pour la sécurité personnelle, voir les fiches de données de sécurité du fabricant pour l'agent de nettoyage et suivre toutes les pratiques de manipulation préconisées.

- Remove enough panels from the unit to gain access to the coil.
- Protect all electrical devices such as motors and controllers from any over spray.
- 3. Straighten any bent coil fins with a fin comb.

## WARNING

#### **Hazardous Pressures!**

Failure to follow safety precautions below could result in coil bursting, which could result in death or serious injury. Coils contain refrigerant under pressure. When cleaning coils, maintain coil cleaning solution temperature under 150°F to avoid excessive pressure in the coil.



# **AAVERTISSEMENT**

# Pressions dangereuses!

Tout manquement aux consignes de sécurité préconisées ci-dessous risquerait d'entraîner un éclatement du serpentin susceptible de provoquer des blessures graves voire mortelles. Les serpentins contiennent du fluide frigorigène sous pression. Lors du nettoyage des serpentins, maintenez la température de l'agent de nettoyage pour serpentin à moins de 65,5 °C (150 °F) pour éviter toute pression excessive dans le serpentin.

- Mix the detergent with water according to the manufacturers instructions. If desired, heat the solution but DO NOT EXCEED 150°F maximum to improve its cleansing capability.
- Pour the cleaning solution into the sprayer. If a highpressure sprayer is used:
  - a. Do not allow sprayer pressure to exceed 600 psi.
  - b. The minimum nozzle spray angle is 15°.
  - Maintain a minimum clearance of 6-inch between the sprayer nozzle and the coil.
  - d. Spray the solution perpendicular (at 90°) to the coil face.
- Spray the leaving-airflow side of the coil first; then spray the opposite side of the coil. Allow the cleaning solution to stand on the coil for 5 minutes.
- 7. Rinse both sides of the coil with cool, clean water.
- Inspect both sides of the coil; if it still appears to be dirty, repeat Step 6 and Step 7.
- 9. Reinstall all of the components and panels removed in Step 1 and any protective covers installed in Step 2.

#### **ERV Wheel Maintenance**

If the unit ERV wheel is going to remain stationary for an extended period of time, even if only in storage, a manual turning should take place every 6 months. This is to avoid the risk of motor grease evaporating from lack of operation.

The energy recovery wheel and components should be inspected twice a year at a minimum. Inspect more often, depending on the environment. For best performance, the following items should be inspected:

- · There is no damage to the wheel or segments.
- The segments are secured with retaining latches closed.
- The wheels spins freely by hand in clockwise direction (viewed from pulley side).
- The energy transfer media is not excessively dirty or covered with build-up. If cleaning is needed, see "ERV Wheel Cleaning," p. 97.
- Diameter seals are properly located and secured. The seal should just touch the energy transfer media surface.

# **ERV Wheel Cleaning**

Energy recovery wheels will get dirty over time and require regular maintenance cleaning to be most effective. Dependent on the environment, the wheel may require more frequent cleaning. Examples where cleaning will need to take place more often include sites with tars, oils, greases, etc., in the air streams. Its important to maintain the energy recovery wheel so that dust particles continue to pass freely through the wheel and do not start to collect which will lead to blocked airflow passages, excessive pressure drop through the wheel and decreased energy savings.

To clean the wheel, determine if it can be pulled from the cassette as a whole or if it needs to be removed in segments. 25-inch diameter one-piece wheels and smaller can be directly taken out of the cassette, otherwise segment the wheel. Begin by brushing the face of the wheel to loosen accumulated dirt.

Use a non-acid based coil cleaner or alkaline detergent solution to wash the small wheel or individual segments; KMP Acti-clean AK-1 concentrate in a 5 percent solution is proven to be effective. To loosen the deposits, soak the small wheel or segments until contaminants are adequately loosened; an overnight soak might be necessary for some environments.

#### Notes:

- The use of acid-based cleaners, aromatic solvents, temperatures over 170° F, or steam may result in damage to the wheel.
- The internal exchange surfaces can be examined by separating the polymer strips by hand to check condition.
   Some staining of the desiccant may be observed and is not harmful to the wheels performance.

Once soaking is complete, rinse the cleaning solution off the wheel until water appears to run clear. Excess water should be allowed to drain off the wheel before segments are replaced or wheels placed back into their cassette. If there is a small amount of water that remains, it will be dried out by airflow when installed in the unit.

# **Final Process**

For future reference, you may find it helpful to record the unit data requested below in the blanks provided.

| (1) Complete Unit Model Number: |  |  |
|---------------------------------|--|--|
|                                 |  |  |
| (2) Unit Serial Number:         |  |  |
|                                 |  |  |

(3) Wiring Diagram Numbers (from unit control panel)— schematic(s)



# Maintenance

| <br>— connection(s) |
|---------------------|
|                     |

# Table 16. Sample maintenance log

|      | Current             |                     |                             | Refrigeran                  | t Circuit #1                |                    |                 |                     |                             | Refrigeran                  | Refrigerant Circuit #2      |                    |                 |
|------|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| Date | Ambient<br>Temp F/C | Compr. Oil<br>Level | Suct.<br>Press.<br>Psig/kPa | Disch.<br>Press<br>Psig/kPa | Liquid<br>Press<br>Psig/kPa | Super-<br>heat F/C | Sub-cool<br>F/C | Compr. Oil<br>Level | Suct.<br>Press.<br>Psig/kPa | Disch.<br>Press<br>Psig/kPa | Liquid<br>Press<br>Psig/kPa | Super-<br>heat F/C | Sub-cool<br>F/C |
|      |                     | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Ok                | -                           |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |
|      |                     | - Ok                | -                           |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Ok                |                             |                             |                             | 1                  | 1               |
|      |                     | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 | - Low               |                             |                             |                             |                    |                 |



# **Alarms and Troubleshooting**

## **Alarms**

# **Programmable Logic Control**

The main unit controller (UC600) can provide the service personnel with unit diagnostics and significant system status information, accessed via Tracer TU software, optional touchscreen display (TD-7), or a building automation connection. The UC600 is a programmable controller that may be field modified from factory settings. These alarm description and operation status points can be used as a guide for further troubleshooting. Additional control boards (Reliatel RTRM, Hot Gas Reheat board, Gas Heat board) may be used in addition to the UC600 to control individual components.

**Note:** For more advanced information on controlling or BAS integration, see Horizon Tracer® UC600 Programming V12 - Integration Guide (OAU-SVP002\*-EN).

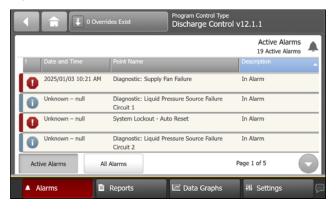
Navigating from the TD-7 home screen, Figure 125, p. 99, allows for current and historical alarms, trend data, setpoints, and current control information, as well as the ability to do an alarm reset once the root cause of the issue has been determined.

Figure 125. TD-7 Home screen



On the Alarms page, the current (active) alarms show what is currently present, and the All Alarms page shows the historical alarm log. Depending on the alarm, use the "Troubleshooting," p. 99 section within this document to further investigate cause(s) of the alarms on units without a TD-7 display or Tracer TU. A flashing red LED on the UC600 shows an alarm that is active. An alarm may clear automatically, and the unit will return to normal operation, if possible.

Figure 126. TD-7 Alarms



Overrides may be present, indicating a manual override either locally (TD-7/Tracer® TU), or externally (BAS). Overrides may also be present when setpoints are changed without reconfiguring using Tracer TU. Be cautious before releasing all overrides that there are not intentional setpoint overrides.

#### **RTRM Failure Modes**

The Reliatel RTRM is used for the refrigeration safety diagnostics on units without a variable speed compressor. This device is used for monitoring high pressure, low pressure, and high discharge line temperature. If one of these devices opens during or before operation, the compressor will be shutdown. The status of the compressors is monitored through the liquid line or suction line pressure transducers, and a feedback wired through the auxiliary connection on the compressor contactor. If the UC600 calls for a compressor, but the connection is not proven through the contactor, a diagnostic will be displayed on the UC600 indicating a compressor operating fault. This can be accessed via trend data within the TD-7 to see an operation history.

Additional information found in "Low Pressure Control ReliaTel Control," p. 20 and "High Pressure Control ReliaTel Control," p. 21.

# **Troubleshooting**

#### Basic unit checks

The following checks can be performed when diagnosing an issue without the use of specialty tools, TU software or extensive knowledge of Trane Horizon OAU operation.

- If equipped, check for alarms on the Main Unit Display (TD-7).
- Check for faults on any installed VFD. Verify all VFDs are operational via visual inspection, VFD Hz, and amperage readings. See "VFD Programming Parameters," p. 103 for additional details.
- Check the phase monitor. Verify it is in good condition, showing a solid green (normal operation) LED and the



## **Alarms and Troubleshooting**

NO contact should be closed. See "Power Phase Monitor," p. 25 for additional details.

- Check factory-installed smoke detector (if equipped), verify it is operational and shows a green LED flash every 5 seconds (normal operation).
- Verify the E-Stop (ESR), IFFR, and RDS relays are illuminated indicating normal operation.

Figure 127. Relay stack



- For emergency stop information see "Emergency Stop Circuit," p. 26.
- For RDS information see "Refrigeration Detection System (RDS)," p. 36.
- Verify all damper actuators are operational, in good working condition, and have tight electrical connections.
  - If equipped with only a two-position outdoor or return air damper actuator, the end switch must be made. All other configurations do not have a damper end switch.

Figure 128. Damper actuator type



- Verify all installed filters, both evaporator and outdoor air, are installed and clean. It is recommended filters be inspected monthly, replaced or cleaned as needed. Depending on application and operating conditions, this may need to be done more frequently. For additional filter details, see "Filters," p. 95.
- Verify condenser and evaporator coils are clean and free of obstructions. Coil cleaning is advised to be performed by a qualified technician at least yearly, depending on the environment coils may need to be cleaned more frequently. For cleaning details, see "Condenser Coil Cleaning," p. 96.

**Note:** Record any abnormalities in operation and any alarms before attempting any type of reset. Do not attempt any reset without knowledge of the cause or direction from a qualified technician.

Additional diagnostics generally require a qualified technician and the use of Tracer® TU software.

#### Additional Unit Checks

If unable to determine and resolve issue(s) with basic unit checks, complete checks below before calling Tech Support. These will be the first items suggested/asked of a technician while on-site with the unit.

**Note:** Values referred to in this section can be found on the TD-7 display, primarily on the Equipment Configuration and System Setpoints graphics, which can be found from the home screen. On units without a TD-7, the display can be shown via Tracer TU by clicking on Show Operator Display.



Figure 129. Tracer TU show operator display



 Verify all installed sensors are reading accurately and within expected range with temperature humidity sensor.

Table 17. Sensors to check

| Sensors                                   | Instance |
|---|----------|
| Outdoor Air Temperature Local             | AI-21    |
| Outdoor Air Relative Humidity Local       | AI-22    |
| Discharge Air Temperature Local           | AI-11    |
| Indoor Coil Leaving Air Temperature Local | AI-15    |
| Space Temperature Local                   | AI-01    |
| Space Humidity Local                      | AI-02    |

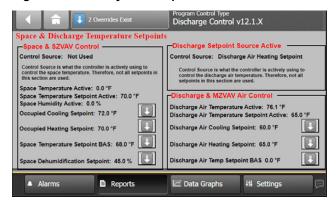
- Any inaccurate temperature or humidity readings should be rectified immediately or will cause erratic operation and undesirable temperature/humidity control.
  - Resistance values for 10K Ohm type II sensors can be found in Table 18. Sensors must be unplugged when checking resistance.

Table 18. 10K Ohm type II sensor resistance values

| Temp°F | OHMS   | Temp°F | OHMS   |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 0      | 85,378 | 65     | 13,475 |
| 5      | 72,931 | 70     | 11,883 |
| 10     | 62,475 | 75     | 10,501 |
| 15     | 53,667 | 80     | 9,298  |
| 20     | 46,225 | 85     | 8,250  |
| 25     | 39,920 | 90     | 7,333  |
| 30     | 34,563 | 95     | 6,531  |
| 35     | 30,000 | 100    | 5,827  |
| 40     | 26,103 | 105    | 5,208  |
| 45     | 22,766 | 110    | 4,663  |
| 50     | 19,902 | 115    | 4,183  |
| 55     | 17,438 | 120    | 3,758  |
| 60     | 15,312 | 125    | 3,380  |

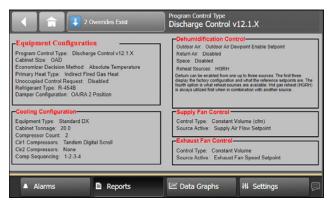
- Values that read in the negative are related to wiring, voltage issues or a failed sensor.
- Verify liquid and suction pressure transducers are reading accurately using a reliable gauge set, even if cooling is not operational.
- Review the temperature setpoints and values on System Setpoints page.

Figure 130. TD-7 system setpoints



- Check the unit mode status based on Heat Cool Mode Status (MV-04).
- Verify program control type; Discharge Control, Multi-Zone VAV, Space Control, or Single Zone VAV (MV-13 or on Equipment Configuration page on the TD-7).
  - Verify Discharge Setpoint Source Active (MV-05)
  - Verify Space Temp Setpoint Source Active (MV-07)
  - Verify Heat Type (MV-09)
  - · Verify Dehumidification Control Type Enabled

Figure 131. TD-7 equipment configuration



 After verifying the above information, if the unit is not operating as desired, contact technical support. It is advised to call while on-site with the unit.

**Note:** Tech Support can be reached at (502) 493-5757, Monday to Friday between 8am and 5pm EST.



## **Alarms and Troubleshooting**

# **Heat Module Ignition Board**

The heat module, upon receiving a request for heating, energizes the appropriate heating stages or strokes the modulating heating valve as required. Units with indirect fire

furnace come with heat module with ignition board that provides control, protection, and diagnostics for the furnace system. For troubleshooting see Table 19, p. 102 and Table 20, p. 102 for LED flash code keys.

Table 19. LED flash code keys for heat module UTEC 1016-xxx Ignition Board

|            |                                   | Troubleshooting Guide for UTEC   | 1016-xxx Ignition Board   |
|------------|-----------------------------------|--|---|
| LED Code   | LED Code System Fault Description |  | Action  |
| Ct d O     | N1                                | LED :- 1 ::  | Control operation normal.   |
| Steady On  | Normal                            | LED is Lit.  | 24 Vac is applied to the control.   |
|            |                                   |  | No power or control hardware fault.   |
| Led is OFF | Lockout                           | LED is OFF.  | Check 120V is being supplied to heater transformer.   |
|            |                                   |  | <ol> <li>Check that 24 Vac is being supplied by transformer. Replace transformer<br/>if not being supplied 24 Vac.</li> </ol>   |
|            |                                   |  | Open pressure switch, limit switch or flame rollout switch.   |
|            |                                   | Air pressure switch contact is open with                                   | Check air pressure switch hose and hose connection between switch and fan.  |
| 1 Flashes  | Lockout                           | Inducer blower running.  | Check reset switch is not tripped for rollout switch.   |
|            |                                   |  | Check high limit switch is not open.  |
|            |                                   |  | 4. Replace pressure switch if contact does not close when fan is running.   |
|            |                                   |  | Pressure switch stuck closed.   |
| 2 Flashes  | Lockout                           | Air pressure switch contact is closed when Inducer blower is not running.  | Check wiring between PS1 and PS2 on ignition control board for correct connection and proper wiring.  |
|            |                                   |  | Check pressure switch functions correctly with and without pressure.  |
|            |                                   |  | Replace pressure switch if fails to function correctly.   |
|            |                                   |  | Ignition/flame sense failure.   |
|            |                                   |  | Verify gas supply is available.   |
|            |                                   |  | Verify gas safety valve is working correctly.   |
| 3 Flashes  | Lockout                           | Ignition locked out from too many ignition attempts.                       | Verify gas manifold pressure is adequate and correct.   |
|            |                                   | ignition attempts.   | <ol> <li>Check spark igniter is not cracked or dirty. Check spark igniter wire is not<br/>covered with oil and debris or cracked. Check wire is connected<br/>correctly.</li> </ol> |
|            |                                   |  | 5. Check flame sensor wiring. Check to see if flame sensor is grounded.   |
|            |                                   |  | Repeated flame losses.  |
| 4 Flashes  |                                   |  | Check pressure switch hose for leaks or poor connection.  |
|            | Lockout                           | Ignition lockout from too many flame losses within a single call for heat. | Check for condensate in pressure switch hose.   |
|            |                                   | main a single sains. House   | 3. Check pressure tap on Inducer blower and pressure switch for blockage.   |
|            |                                   |  | Check functionality of Inducer blower.  |
| 5 Flashes  | Lockout                           | Control hardware fault detected.   | Internal control fault.   |
| o riasnes  | Lockout                           | Control nardware laut detected.  | Change ignition board.  |

Table 20. LED flash code keys for two stage heat module UTEC 1171-63 Ignition Board

| Troubleshooting Guide for UTEC 1171-63 Two Stage Board |        |       |                            |  |
|--|--------|-------|----------------------------|--|
| LED Code System Fault Description                      |        |       | Action                     |  |
| Heartbeat Normal System is Normal                      | Normal |       | All conditions are normal. |  |
|  |        | None. |                            |  |



Table 20. LED flash code keys for two stage heat module UTEC 1171-63 Ignition Board (continued)

|           |                   | Troubleshooting Guide for UTEC  | 1171-63 Two Stage Board   |
|-----------|-------------------|---|---|
| LED Code  | System            | Fault Description   | Action  |
|           |                   |   | Pressure switch open with Inducer ON.   |
|           |                   |   | Airflow pressure switch hose leaking; repair and/or replace.  |
|           |                   |   | Airflow pressure switch hose plugged; repair and/or replace.  |
| 2 Flashes | Inducer ON/No gas | Airflow pressure switch contact is open; Inducer blower is running.   | Airflow pressure switch hose fittings plugged or damaged; repair and/or replace.  |
|           |                   | inducer blower is furning.  | Air pressure hose and/or switch has condensate accumulation; repair and/or replace.   |
|           |                   |   | Air pressure switch not functioning; replace.   |
|           |                   |   | Inducer blower not working; repair or replace.  |
|           |                   |   | Pressure switch close with Inducer OFF.   |
| 2 Flackes | No Flore          | Air pressure switch contact is closed                                 | Check wiring to the airflow pressure switch.  |
| 3 Flashes | No Flame          | when Inducer blower is not running.                                   | Check airflow pressure switch continuity with OHM meter; if not open replace.   |
|           |                   |   | Lockout from too many failed ignition tries.  |
|           |                   |   | Confirm gas supply available; verify manifold gas pressure is correct.  |
|           |                   |   | Verify manual gas shut-off valve is open.   |
|           |                   |   | Verify Gas Safety Control valve is in ON position.  |
| 4 Flashes | Lockout           | Failed to ignite after too many failed attempts.                      | Confirm that spark is present and check spark igniter for debris between electrodes.  |
|           |                   |   | <ol> <li>Check for cracked ceramic; check for cracked, oil, debris, damaged or<br/>disconnected connections on ignition wires.</li> </ol> |
|           |                   |   | Check for recirculation of exhaust gases.   |
|           |                   |   | 7. If all above condition are OK, replace ignition board.   |
|           |                   | Burners light and then drop out resulting in too many flame failures. | Lockout from too many flame losses.   |
|           |                   |   | Check flame sensor ceramic is not cracked; check flame rod for being coated with debris and oil.  |
| 5 Flashes | Lockout           |   | Check flame sensor wire is connected correctly; not cracked, no abrasions and not covered with debris.                                    |
|           |                   |   | Check for recirculation of exhaust gases.   |
|           |                   |   | Check flame stability and proper location from sensor.  |
|           |                   |   | 5. Check that pressure switch is not dropping out due to loss of pressure.  |
|           |                   |   | High temperature switch open.   |
| 6 Flashes | No Flame          | Inducer fan is running on high speed,                                 | Check temperature rise and airflow over the heat exchanger.   |
|           |                   | burners are OFF, high limit is open.                                  | If high limit does not reset, change high limit switch.   |
|           |                   |   | Rollout switch open.  |
|           |                   |   | Check for blockages in exhaust vent assembly.   |
| 7 Flashes | No Flame          | Rollout switch has tripped open.                                      | Check for air leaks inside the burner compartment.  |
|           |                   |   | Reset the rollout switch and observe flame for any signs of rollout.  |
|           |                   |   | Flame present with gas OFF.   |
|           |                   |   | Verify there is no voltage to the gas valve.  |
| 8 Flashes | Lockout           | Flame is present without any call for heat.                           | Check gas line pressure making sure it is not higher than allowed by gas valve manufacturer.  |
|           |                   |   | If valve is not energized, check for gas flow. If gas is flowing, replace gas valve; verify line and manifold gas pressure are correct.   |
| 9 Flashes | Lockout           | Exceeded max limit trips in one call for heat.                        | Exceeded max limit trips in one call for heat (5).  |

# VFD Programming Parameters TR150 VFD

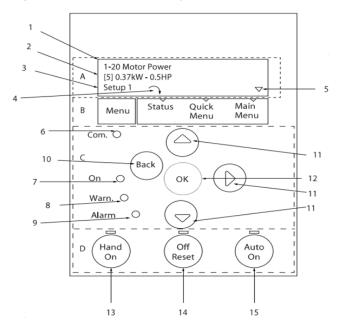
Units shipped with TR150 variable frequency drives (VFD) are

preset and run tested at the factory. If a problem with a TR150 VFD occurs, ensure that the programmed parameters listed in Table 21, p. 104 have been set before replacing the drive. See Figure 132, p. 104 for TR150 VFD display layout.



# **Alarms and Troubleshooting**

Figure 132. TR150 VFD display



| 1  | Parameter number and name.  |
|----|---|
| 2  | Parameter value   |
| 3  | Setup number shows the active setup and the edit setup. If the same setup acts as both active and edit setup, only that setup number is shown (factory setting). When active and edit setup differ, both numbers are shown in the display (setup 12). The number lashing, indicates the edit setup.                             |
| 4  | Motor direction is shown to the bottom left of the display-indicated by a small arrow painting either clockwise or counterclockwise.  |
| 5  | The triangle indicates if the keypad is in status, quick menu or main menu.   |
| 6  | Com LED: Flashes when bus communication is communicating.   |
| 7  | Green LED/On: Control section is working.   |
| 8  | Yellow LED/War: Indicates a warning.  |
| 9  | Flashing Red LED/Alarm: Indicates an alarm.   |
| 10 | [Back]: For moving to the previous step or layer in the navigation structure.   |
| 11 | [▲][▼][▶] : For maneuvering between parameter groups, parameters and within parameters. Can also be used for setting local reference.   |
| 12 | [OK]: For selecting a parameter and for accepting changes to parameter settings.  |
| 13 | [Hand On]: Starts the motor and enables control of the frequency converter via the keypad.  NOTICE: Terminal 27 Digital Input (5-12 Terminal 27 Digital Input) has coast inverse as default setting. This means that [Hand On) does not start the motor if there is no 24 V to terminal 27. Connect terminal 12 to terminal 27. |
| 14 | [Off/Reset]: Stops the motor (Off). If in alarm made, the alarm is reset.   |
| 15 | [Auto On]: Frequency converter is controlled either via control terminals or serial communication.  |
|    | serial communication.   |

Verify parameters from Table 21, p. 104 are set to match parameters from unit nameplate.

- 1. To check a parameter press the Main Menu button twice (press the Back button if the main menu does not display).
- 2. Scroll down to Load and Motor, press OK.
- 3. Select 1-2, press OK.
- 4. Press down until the validated parameter is displayed. Any parameter can then be modified by pressing **OK** and pressing the **Up** and **Down** buttons.
- 5. When the desired selection has been made, press **OK**.

Should replacing the TR150 VFD become necessary, the replacement is not configured with all of Trane operating parameters. The TR150 VFD must be programmed before attempting to operate the unit.

Table 21. TR150 VFD programming parameters

| Parameter                   | Setting  |
|-----------------------------|--|
| 0-03 Regional setting       | 1 [North America]                                    |
|                             | 102 (200 to 240V, 60Hz)                              |
| 0-06 Grid Type              | 120 (380 to 440V, 60Hz)                              |
|                             | 132 (525 to 600V, 60Hz)                              |
| 1-03 Torque Characteristics | Variable Torque (Condenser, Supply,<br>Exhaust fans) |
|                             | Auto Energy Optim. VT (ERV)                          |
| 1-10 Motor Construction     | 0 [Asynchron]  |
| 1-20 Motor Power            | Nameplate  |



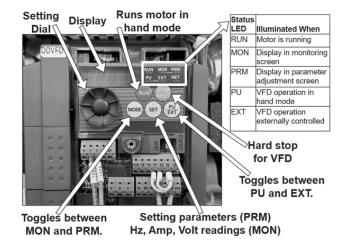
Table 21. TR150 VFD programming parameters

| Parameter                        | Setting                   |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1-22 Motor Voltage               | Nameplate                 |
| 1-23 Motor Frequency             | Nameplate                 |
| 1-24 Motor Current               | Nameplate (1 Amp Minimum) |
| 1-25 Motor Nominal Speed         | Nameplate                 |
| 3-02 Min Ref                     | Job Specific (20Hz Min)   |
| 3-03 Max Reference               | Job Specific              |
| 3-41 Ramp 1 UP                   | 30 Sec.                   |
| 3-42 Ramp 1 DN                   | 30 Sec.                   |
| 4-12 Motor Speed Low Limit [Hz]  | Job Specific (20Hz Min)   |
| 4-14 Motor Speed High Limit [Hz] | Job Specific              |
| 4-19 Maximum Output Frequency    | 90Hz                      |
| 6-10 Term 53 LOW                 | 0V                        |
| 6-11 Term 53 HIGH                | 10V                       |
| 6-14 Min Ref. Feedback           | 0                         |
| 6-15 Max Ref. Feedback           | Job Specific              |
| 6-19 Term 53 Mode                | 1 [Voltage]               |
| 14-20 Reset Mode                 | 13 (Infinite)             |
| 14-21 Reset Time                 | 10s                       |
| 0-50 LCP Copy                    | 1 (all to LCP)            |

#### Mitsubishi VFD

Units shipped with Mitsubishi variable frequency drives (VFD) are preset and run tested at the factory. If a problem with a Mitsubishi VFD occurs, ensure that the programmed parameters listed in Table 22, p. 105 (208V-460V) or Table 23, p. 105 (575V) have been set before replacing the drive.

Figure 133. Mitsubishi VFD navigation



Verify parameters are set to match parameters from unit nameplate. For units that are 208V to 460V use Table 22, p. 105, for units that are 575V use Table 23, p. 105.

- 1. To check a parameter turn the setting dial until the validated parameter is displayed.
- 2. Press the Set button.

- 3. The display will blink between the parameter number value and the parameter setting value.
- 4. Turn the setting dial again until the next desired selection has been made and displayed.
- 5. Repeat until all the parameters are inspected.
- Should replacing the Mitsubishi VFD become necessary, the replacement is not configured with all of Trane operating parameters. The Mitsubishi VFD must be programmed before attempting to operate the unit.

**Note:** To unlock VFD settings, parameter 77 must be set to 2.

Table 22. Mitsubishi VFD programming parameters 208V to 460V

| Parameter | Setting   | Description                           |
|-----------|-----------|---------------------------------------|
| 1         | Max. Hz   | Maximum Frequency                     |
| 2         | Min. Hz   | Minimum Frequency                     |
| 7         | 30 s      | Acceleration Time                     |
| 8         | 30 s      | Deceleration Time                     |
| 9         | Motor FLA | Electronic Thermal O/L Relay          |
| 38        | Max Hz    | Maximum Frequency                     |
| 39        | Max Hz    | Maximum Frequency                     |
| 67        | 5         | Number of Retries at Fault Occurrence |
| 71        | 3         | Applied Motor                         |
| 73        | 1         | Analog Input Selection                |
| 152       | 6%        | Zero Current Detection Level          |
| 153       | 1 s       | Zero Current Detection Time           |
| 190       | 0         | RUN Terminal Function Selection       |
| 79        | 2         | Operative Mode Selection              |
| 77        | 2         | Parameter Write Selection             |

Table 23. Mitsubishi VFD programming parameters 575V

| Parameter | Setting   | Description                           |
|-----------|-----------|---------------------------------------|
| 1         | Max Hz    | Maximum Frequency                     |
| 2         | Min Hz    | Minimum Frequency                     |
| 7         | 30 s      | Acceleration Time                     |
| 8         | 30 s      | Deceleration Time                     |
| 9         | Motor FLA | Electronic Thermal O/L Relay          |
| 38        | Max Hz    | Maximum Frequency                     |
| 39        | Max Hz    | Maximum Frequency                     |
| 67        | 5         | Number of Retries at Fault Occurrence |
| 71        | 3         | Applied Motor                         |
| 73        | 1         | Analog Input Selection                |
| 152       | 6%        | Zero Current Detection Level          |
| 153       | 1 s       | Zero Current Detection Time           |
| 190       | 0         | RUN Terminal Function Selection       |
| 79        | 2         | Operative Mode Selection              |
| 77        | 2         | Parameter Write Selection             |



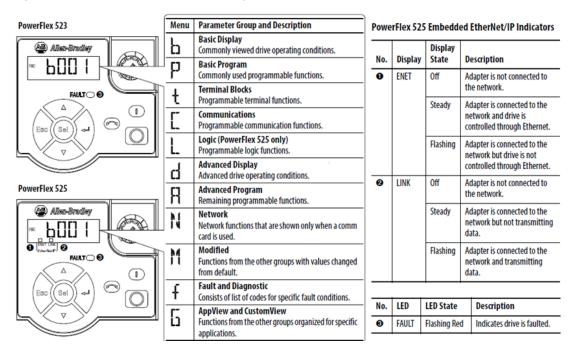
## **Alarms and Troubleshooting**

#### Allen Bradley PowerFlex 520 Series VFD

Units shipped with Allen Bradley PowerFlex 520 series variable frequency drives (VFD) are preset and run tested at the factory. If a problem with a PowerFlex 523/525 VFD occurs,

Figure 134. PowerFlex 523/525 VFD navigation

ensure that the programmed parameters listed in Table 24, p. 107 have been set before replacing the drive. See Figure 134, p. 106 for PowerFlex 523/525 VFD display layouts.



| Кеу   | Name                   | Description  | Key | Name          | Description  |
|---|------------------------|--|-----|---------------|--|
| $\begin{array}{ c c }\hline & & \\ & & \\ \hline & & \\ \hline & & \\ \hline \end{array}$ | Up Arrow<br>Down Arrow | Scroll through user-selectable display parameters or groups. Increment values.                       |     | Reverse       | Used to reverse direction of the drive. Default is active.  Controlled by parameters P046, P048, and P050 [Start Source x] and A544 [Reverse Disable]. |
| Esc   | Escape                 | Back one step in programming menu.<br>Cancel a change to a parameter value and exit<br>Program Mode. |     | Start         | Used to start the drive. Default is active. Controlled by parameters P046, P048, and P050 [Start Source x].  |
| Sel   | Select                 | Advance one step in programming menu. Select a digit when viewing parameter value.                   |     | Stop          | Used to stop the drive or clear a fault. This key is always active. Controlled by parameter P045 [Stop Mode].  |
| <   | Enter                  | Advance one step in programming menu. Save a change to a parameter value.                            |     | Potentiometer | Used to control speed of drive. Default is active. Controlled by parameters P047, P049, and P051 [Speed Referencex].                                   |

Verify parameters from Table 24, p. 107 are set to match parameters from unit nameplate.

- 1. To check parameters, press **Esc** to enter the parameter group list. The parameter group letter will flash.
- 2. Press the **Up** or **Down** arrows to scroll through the group list and press **Enter** or **Sel** to enter a group. The right digit of parameter in that group will flash.
- Press the Up or Down arrows to scroll through the list.
   Press Enter to view the value of parameter and Enter or Sel to enter Program Mode to edit the value.
- Once the LCD displays the word Program you are able to edit values. Press Sel to move from digit to digit while changing values.
- Press Enter to save a change and exit Program Mode or press Esc to cancel a change and exit Program Mode.
- 6. Repeat to verify each parameter.
- Should replacing the PowerFlex 523/525 VFD become necessary, the replacement is not configured with all of Trane operating parameters. The PowerFlex 523/525 VFD must be programmed before attempting to operate the unit.



Table 24. Allen Bradley PowerFlex 520 series VFD

| Parameter              | Settings   |  |  |
|------------------------|--|--|--|
| P030 Language          | 1 [ENGLISH]<br>3 [ESPANOL]   |  |  |
| P031 MOTOR NP VOLTS    | 10V [200V to 240V, 60HZ]<br>20V [400V to 440V, 60HZ]<br>25V [525V to 600V, 60HZ] |  |  |
| P032 MOTOR NP HERTZ    | NAMEPLATE [60 HZ]  |  |  |
| P033 MOTOR OL CURRENT  | NAMEPLATE  |  |  |
| P034 MOTOR NP FLA      | NAMEPLATE  |  |  |
| P035 MOTOR NP POLES    | 2 [3600 RPM]<br>4 [1800 RPM]<br>6 [1200 RPM]                                     |  |  |
| P036 MOTOR NP RPM      | NAMEPLATE  |  |  |
| P037 Motor NP Power    | NAMEPLATE / Drive Rated Power  |  |  |
| P038 Voltage Class     | 2 [480V]<br>3 [600V]   |  |  |
| P040 Autotune          | JOB SPECIFIC   |  |  |
| P041 Accel Time 1      | 30 Sec.  |  |  |
| P042 Decel Time 1      | 30 Sec.  |  |  |
| P043 Minimum Freq      | JOB SPECIFIC   |  |  |
| P044 Maximum Freq      | JOB SPECIFIC   |  |  |
| P046 Start Source1     | 1 [Keypad]   |  |  |
| P048 Start Source2     | 2 [DigIn TrmBlk]   |  |  |
| P050 Start Source3     | 3 [Serial/DSI] - POWERFLEX 523.<br>5 [Ethernet/IP] - POWERFLEX 525               |  |  |
| P047 Speed Reference1  | 1 [Drive Pot]  |  |  |
| P049 Speed Reference2  | 5 [0-10V Input]  |  |  |
| P051 Speed Reference3  | 3 [Serial/DSI] - POWERFLEX 523<br>15 [Ethernet/IP] - POWERFLEX 525               |  |  |
| P053 Reset to Defaults | 0 [Ready/Idle] 1 [Param Reset] 2 [Factory Reset] 3 [Power Reset]                 |  |  |

## **Digital Scroll Compressor Controller**

Units with digital scroll compressor controller provides control, protection, and diagnostics for the digital compressor system. It also modulates or cycles the unloader solenoid in an ON/ OFF pattern based on capacity demand signal from the system controller.

Figure 135. Digital scroll compressor controller





**POWER** LED (Green) - Voltage is present at the 24 Vac power terminals. When the anti-short cycle timer is active, the green LED will flash.

**UNLOADER** LED (Yellow) - Unloader solenoid status. This LED is **ON** when the unloader solenoid is energized.

**ALERT** LED (Red) - Communicates an abnormal system condition through a unique flash code. The **ALERT** LED will flash a number of times consecutively, pause and then repeat the process. The number of consecutive flashes, defined as the flash code (Table 25, p. 107), correlates to a particular abnormal condition.

While each **ALERT** code is active, the alarm relay contacts (A1 and A2) are closed. The **ALERT** code will remain active, and the alarm relay contacts closed until the reset conditions have been met or 24 Vac power has been cycled **OFF** and **ON**. All flash codes except code 6 and 8 result in the compressor contactor, unloader solenoid and vapor injection solenoid being de-energized. Flash codes 3, 4, 5, and 9 activate the 2-minute anti-cycle timer. Flash code 2 activates the 30-minute timer. All LEDs flashing at the same rate indicates 24 Vac supply is too low for operation.

All LEDs on solid at the same time indicate digital scroll compressor controller failure.

Whenever power is cycled **OFF** and **ON**, the current flash code and all internal counters are reset.

Table 25. Digital scroll compressor controller flash code details

| Trouble                   | Possible Cause                                       |  |  |
|---------------------------|--|--|--|
|                           | Compressor limit switch(es) open.                    |  |  |
| Digital Scroll Compressor | Compressor limit switch(es) open.                    |  |  |
| not Running.              | Minimum on/off time.                                 |  |  |
|                           | Refer to digital scroll controller alarm flash code. |  |  |

| Digital Scroll Compressor Controller Alert Flash Codes |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|
| Code 1   | Reserved for future use.                                   |  |  |  |
| Code 2   | High Discharge Temperature.                                |  |  |  |
| Code 3   | No current when compressor should be running.              |  |  |  |
| Code 4 Locked Rotor.                                   |  |  |  |  |
| Code 5   | Normal operation when compressor is disabled.              |  |  |  |
| Code 6   | Thermistor Fault. Thermistor is not connected.             |  |  |  |
| Code 7   | Revere for future use                                      |  |  |  |
| Code 8   | Current is detected when compressor should be <b>OFF</b> . |  |  |  |
| Code 9   | Supply voltage to controller dropped below 18.5 Vac.       |  |  |  |



# Horizon™ OAU Filter Guide

Table 26. OAND, OANE, and OANF Rev 5 units

| Evaporator                 |                    |     |        |       |
|----------------------------|--------------------|-----|--------|-------|
| Thickness                  | MERV               | Qty | Height | Width |
| 2 in.                      | 8, 13              | 9   | 24     | 20    |
| 4 in.                      | 14                 | 9   | 24     | 20    |
| Auxiliary Modu             | le (58XX ERV)      |     |        |       |
| Return Air                 |                    |     |        |       |
| Thickness                  | MERV               | Qty | Height | Width |
| 2 in.                      | 8                  | 6   | 18     | 20    |
| Outside Air <sup>(a)</sup> |                    |     |        |       |
| Thickness                  | MERV               | Qty | Height | Width |
| 2 in.                      | 8                  | 6   | 18     | 20    |
| Auxiliary Modu             | le (68XX/74XX ERV) |     |        |       |
| Return Air                 |                    |     |        |       |
| Thickness                  | MERV               | Qty | Height | Width |
| 2 in.                      | 8                  | 8   | 25     | 20    |
| Outside Air <sup>(a)</sup> |                    |     |        |       |
| Thickness                  | MERV               | Qty | Height | Width |
| 2 in.                      | 8                  | 8   | 25     | 20    |
| Inlet                      |                    | 1   |        | 1     |
| Thickness                  | Material           | Qty | Height | Width |
| 2 in.                      | Aluminum Mesh      | 10  | 16     | 25    |

<sup>(</sup>a) No filters will be provided on the outside air path of the auxiliary module if electric preheat is provided.

Table 27. OAB units

| Evaporator                 |       |     |        |       |  |
|----------------------------|-------|-----|--------|-------|--|
| Thickness                  | MERV  | Qty | Height | Width |  |
| 2 in.                      | 8, 13 | 2   | 20     | 24    |  |
| 4 in.                      | 14    | 2   | 20     | 24    |  |
| Auxiliary Module           |       |     |        |       |  |
| Return Air                 |       |     |        |       |  |
| Thickness                  | MERV  | Qty | Height | Width |  |
| 2 in.                      | 8     | 4   | 20     | 24    |  |
| Outside Air <sup>(a)</sup> |       |     |        |       |  |
| Thickness                  | MERV  | Qty | Height | Width |  |
| 2 in.                      | 8     | 4   | 20     | 24    |  |

<sup>(</sup>a) No filters will be provided on the outside air path of the auxiliary module if electric preheat is provided.

Table 28. OADG units

| Evaporator                |                            |     |                  |                  |  |  |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|-----|------------------|------------------|--|--|
| Thickness                 | MERV                       | Qty | Height           | Width            |  |  |
| 2 in (F 1 am)             | 8                          | 6   | 24 in. (63.5 cm) | 18 in. (45.7 cm) |  |  |
| 2 in. (5.1 cm)            | 13                         | 0   |                  |                  |  |  |
| 4 in. (10.2 cm)           | 14                         | 6   | 24 in. (63.5 cm) | 18 in. (45.7 cm) |  |  |
| ERV Module                |                            |     |                  |                  |  |  |
| Return Air                |                            |     |                  |                  |  |  |
| Thickness                 | MERV                       | Qty | Height           | Width            |  |  |
| 2 in.(5.1 cm)             | 8                          | 6   | 20 in.(50.8 cm)  | 20 in.(50.8 cm)  |  |  |
| Outside Air <sup>(a</sup> | Outside Air <sup>(a)</sup> |     |                  |                  |  |  |
| Thickness                 | MERV                       | Qty | Height           | Width            |  |  |
| THICKINGS                 | IVIERV                     | Qty | Height           | wiatii           |  |  |
| 2 in.(5.1 cm)             | 8<br>8                     | 6   | 20 in.(50.8 cm)  | 20 in.(50.8 cm)  |  |  |
|                           |                            | -   |                  |                  |  |  |
| 2 in.(5.1 cm)             |                            | -   |                  |                  |  |  |

<sup>(</sup>a) No filters will be provided on the outside air path of the auxiliary module if electric preheat is provided.

#### Table 29. OANG Rev 6 units

| Evaporator (40 to 50 ton - 4 and 6 row coils; 55 to 80 ton - 6 row coils |               |     |                    |                 |  |  |  |
|--|---------------|-----|--------------------|-----------------|--|--|--|
| Thickness  | MERV          | Qty | Height             | Width           |  |  |  |
| 2 in.(5.1 cm)  | 8             | 15  | 20 in.(50.8 cm)    | 18 in.(45.7 cm) |  |  |  |
| 2 111.(3.1 6111)   | 13            | 13  | 20 111.(30.6 C111) |                 |  |  |  |
| 4 in.(10.2 cm)   | 14            | 15  | 20 in.(50.8 cm)    | 18 in.(45.7 cm) |  |  |  |
| Evaporator (55 to 80 ton - 4 row coils)                                  |               |     |                    |                 |  |  |  |
| Thickness  | MERV          | Qty | Height             | Width           |  |  |  |
| 2 in.(5.1 cm)  | 8             | 12  | 20 in.(50.8 cm)    | 25 in.(63.5 cm) |  |  |  |
| 2 111.(5.1 (111)   | 13            |     |                    |                 |  |  |  |
| 4 in.(10.2 cm)   | 14            | 12  | 20 in.(50.8 cm)    | 25 in.(63.5 cm) |  |  |  |
| ERV Module   |               |     |                    |                 |  |  |  |
| Return Air   |               |     |                    |                 |  |  |  |
| Thickness  | MERV          | Qty | Height             | Width           |  |  |  |
| 2 in.(5.1 cm)  | 8             | 15  | 24 in.(61 cm)      | 18 in.(45.7 cm) |  |  |  |
| Outside Air <sup>(a)</sup>   |               |     |                    |                 |  |  |  |
| Thickness  | MERV          | Qty | Height             | Width           |  |  |  |
| 2 in.(5.1 cm)  | 8             | 15  | 24 in.(61 cm)      | 18 in.(45.7 cm) |  |  |  |
| Inlet Hood   |               | l . | '                  |                 |  |  |  |
| Thickness  | Material      | Qty | Height             | Width           |  |  |  |
| 2 in.(5.1 cm)  | Aluminum Mesh | 12  | 24 in.(61 cm)      | 24 in.(61 cm)   |  |  |  |

<sup>(</sup>a) No filters will be provided on the outside air path of the auxiliary module if electric preheat is provided.



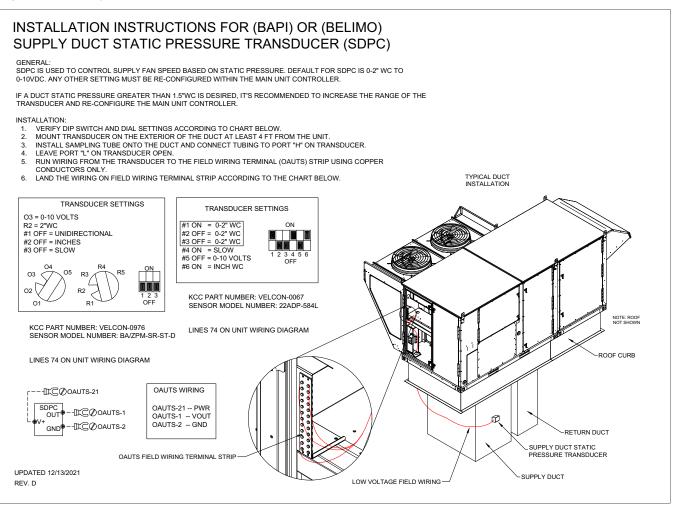
# **Supply and Exhaust Fan K- Factors**

Table 30. Supply and exhaust fan K-factors

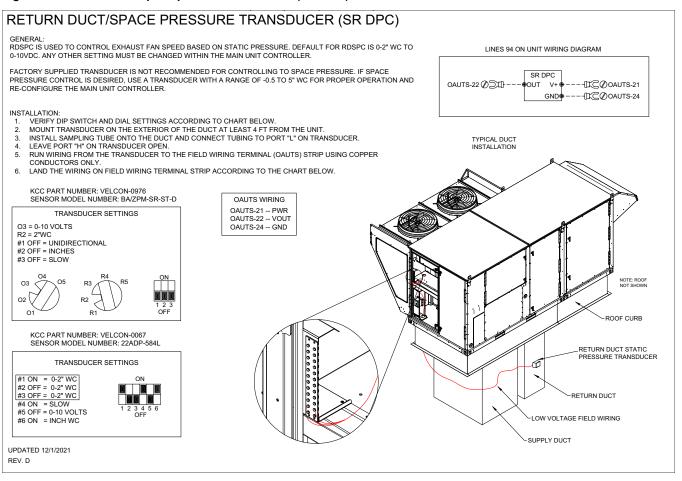
| Supply/exhaust fan wheel size | Fan K-factor |
|-------------------------------|--------------|
| 10"                           | 766.4        |
| 12"                           | 1211.2       |
| 14"                           | 1606.9       |
| 16"                           | 2074.6       |
| 18"                           | 2302.5       |
| 18" x 2                       | 4605         |
| 20"                           | 3106         |
| 20" x 2                       | 6212         |
| 22"                           | 3945.4       |
| 22" x 2                       | 7890.8       |
| 25"                           | 4952.8       |
| 25" x 2                       | 9905.6       |
| 355                           | 1221.8       |
| 355 x 2                       | 2443.6       |
| 450                           | 1736.9       |
| 450 x 2                       | 3473.7       |

### Field Installation of Factory-Provided Sensors

#### Figure 136. Supply duct static pressure transducer (SDPC)



#### Figure 137. Return duct/space pressure transducer (SR DPC)



#### Figure 138. Discharge air temperature sensor (DTC)

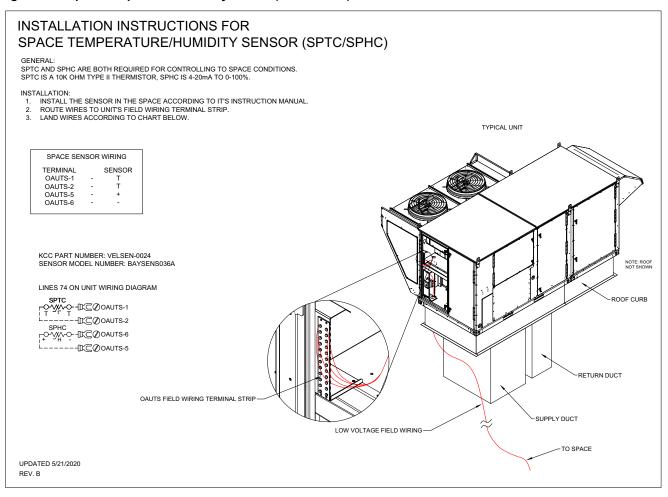
## INSTALLATION INSTRUCTIONS FOR DISCHARGE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR (DTC) THE DISCHARGE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR IS REQUIRED FOR UNIT OPERATION. DISCHARGE AIR SENSOR MUST BE INSTALLED AT LEAST 4 FT DOWN DUCT ON UNITS WITHOUT ELECTRIC HEAT, AND INSTALLED AFTER A TRANSITION ON UNITS WITH ELECTRIC HEAT. IT'S RECOMMENDED THAT THE DISCHARGE AIR SENSOR BE INSTALLED AFTER A TRANSITION ON UNITS WITH GAS HEAT TO ALLOW MIXING OF THE STRATIFIED AIR WHEN HEAT CAPACITY IS BELOW 50%. INSTALL THE SENSOR ON THE SIDE OF THE DUCT AND WIRE TO OAUTS-23 AND 24 ON THE FIELD WIRING TERMINAL STRIP (NOT POLARITY SENSITIVE). TYPICAL UNIT KCC PART NUMBER: VELSEN-0021 SENSOR MODEL NUMBER: TE-DFG-B1244-00 LINES 58 ON UNIT WIRING DIAGRAM . --∭©Ø OAUTS-24 -ROOF CURB OAUTS FIELD WIRING TERMINAL STRIP RETURN DUCT DISCHARGE AIR TEMPERATURE SENSOR SUPPLY DUCT UPDATED 5/21/2020 REV. C

Note: Reference "Ductwork," p. 70 section for installation

details.



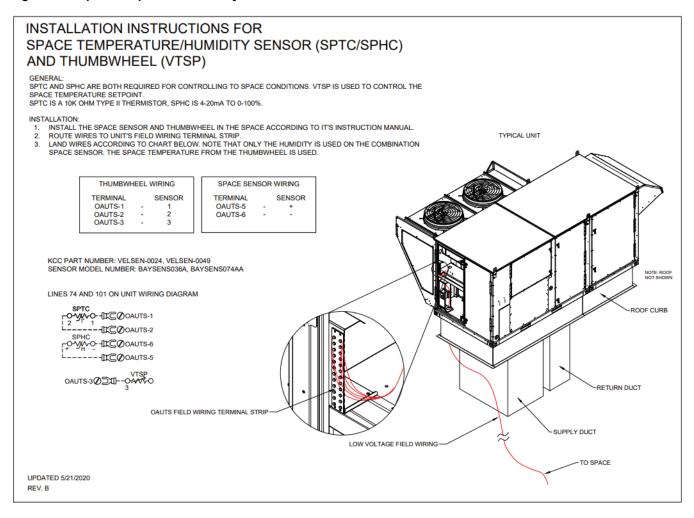
Figure 139. Space temperature/humidity sensor (SPTC/SPHC)





#### **Appendix**

#### Figure 140. Space temperature/humidity sensor with thumb wheel

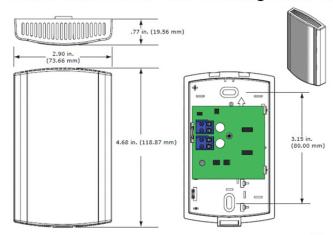


#### Figure 141. BAYSENS036A installation instructions

#### **Sensor Specifications**

| Accuracy:                    | ±3% RH over 20–95% RH at 77°F (25°C). Includes hysteresis, linearity, and repeatability. |
|------------------------------|--|
| Operating temperature range: | From -20°F to 140°F (-29°C to 60°C)  |
| Supply voltage:              | 18-36 Vdc  |
| Drift rate:                  | Less than 1% per year  |
| Operating measurement range: | 0-99% RH, noncondensing  |
| Sensing element:             | Polymer capacitive   |
| Output characteristics:      | 4-20 mA for 0-100% RH (X13790486010 is 20- mA for 0-100% RH)                             |
| Repeatability:               | 0.5% RH  |
| Hysteresis:                  | Less that 1% RH  |
| Sensitivity:                 | 0.1% RH  |
| Storage temperature:         | From -85°F to 158°F (-65°C to 70°C)  |
| Thermistor resistance:       | 10 kΩ at 77°F  |
| Temperature accuracy:        | ±0.36°F (±0.2°C)   |
|                              |  |

### **Sensor Dimensions and Locating Best Practices**



Proper location of the *room humidity sensor* is important to ensure accurate measurement. Place the sensor in an area of the room with good air circulation.

- Places to avoid when locating the sensor:

  Locations subject to draft from windows, doors, or diffusers

  Surfaces with an uncooled or unheated area behind them, such as an outside wall or the wall of an unoccupied store room
- Near heat sources, such as radiant heat from the sun, heat from appliances, or heat from concealed pipes or chimneys
- Dead spots behind doors, draperies, or in corners
- Walls having excessive vibration
- Corrosive environments such as near swimming pools or in hospital

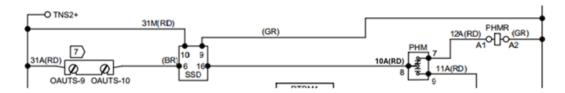
#### Mounting

- To mount the **room humidity sensor**, first choose a flat interior surface that is approximately 54 inches (1.4 m) from the floor and then:

  1. Remove sensor cover by pressing on the thumb tab at the bottom of the enclosure. Tilt the cover forward and raise it over the top of the back plate.
- Feed the wires through the base.
- Attach sensor to drywall or plaster (hardware not included with the sensor).
  - Note: For a  $2 \times 4$  junction box, mount the sensor using two #6-32 screws.
- Connect the controller wires to the terminals on the sensor (refer to the next section about wiring).
  Replace cover by engaging tab hinges on top of the unit and then
- push to snap in place

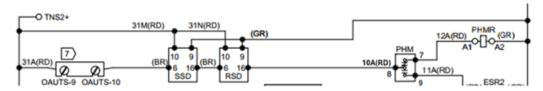
### Field Installation of Smoke Detector Wiring

Figure 142. Supply/return smoke detector wiring



- Locate the smoke detector in unit for installation.
- 2. Remove wire 10A (RD) from OAUTS 10 terminal.
- 3. Run (GR) wire from terminal 9 on the detectors to the common (-) line of TNS2.
- 4. Run wire 31M (RD) from terminal 10 on the detectors to the +24VAC of TNS2.
- 5. Run wire (BR) from OAUTS-10 terminal to terminal 6 on the Smoke Detector.
- Connect wire 10A (RD) from PHM (terminal 8) to terminal 16 on the smoke detector.

Figure 143. Supply and return smoke detector wiring



- 1. Find suitable location for detector's install.
- 2. Remove wire 10A (RD) from OAUTS 10 terminal.
- 3. Run (GR) wire from terminal 9 on the detectors to the common (-) line of TNS2.
- Run wire 31M (RD) and 31N (RD) wire from terminal 10 on the detectors to the +24VAC of TNS2.
- 5. Run wire (BR) from OAUTS-10 terminal to terminal 6 on the Supply Smoke Detector.
- 6. Run wire (BR) from terminal 16 on Supply Smoke Detector to terminal 6 of the Return Smoke Detector.
- 7. Connect wire 10A (RD) from PHM (terminal 8) to terminal 16 on the Return Smoke Detector.



## **Sequence of Operation**

### **Occupied**

### **Starting Sequence**

Occupied operation begins when the unit is placed in occupied via BAS or when OAUTS-7 and 8 is closed on the field wiring terminal strip (shipped with factory installed jumper).

#### **Two-Position Outdoor Air Damper**

Damper open close command is enabled, energizing the outdoor air damper actuator. The supply fan starting sequence begins once the damper end switch is closed.

# Two-Position Outdoor and Return Air Dampers

Damper open close command is enabled, energizing the outdoor air damper actuator and de-energizing the return air damper (spring open). The supply fan starting sequence begins immediately (no end switch installed).

#### Two-Position Return Air Damper

Damper open close command is enabled, energizing the outdoor air damper actuator. The supply fan starting sequence begins once the damper end switch is closed.

# Modulating Outdoor and Return Air Dampers

Outdoor air damper position command is adjusted to meet the outdoor air damper minimum position setpoint. The supply fan starting sequence begins immediately (no end switch installed).

### **Supply Fan Operation**

After completing initial start-up, the supply fan start-up sequence will begin by enabling the supply fan start stop command and setting the supply fan speed command to 50 percent for the initial 90-seconds of operation unless they are constant speed units which will be ran at supply fan speed setpoint.

The following sections describe the standard sequence of operation based on ordered options. For additional options on supply fan control, refer to (Additional Factory Available Features).

#### **Constant Speed Supply Fan**

Standard on CV units without airflow monitoring.

The supply fan (VFD) operates at a constant, supply fan speed setpoint and does not vary supply fan speed to maintain an airflow setpoint.

#### Constant Volume Supply Fan

Standard on CV units with airflow monitoring.

The supply fan speed (ECM or VFD) is adjusted to maintain a constant airflow setpoint based on the reading from the supply airflow monitoring system. The airflow is factory set but can be adjusted in the field above the minimum airflow setpoints.

With Constant Volume operation, the supply fan speed command is adjusted to maintain the supply fan airflow local to the supply airflow setpoint active. Supply fan airflow setpoint active is set to the supply fan airflow setpoint (adj.).

# Supply Duct Static Control (Multi-Zone VAV)

Standard (required) with multi-zone VAV Control.

supply fan speed command is adjusted to maintain the duct static pressure setpoint active. Supply fan speed is limited to keep the supply airflow above the supply fan airflow minimum setpoint active, which is a program-determined setpoint based on factory settings and mode of operation. Factory set minimum airflows vary between heating and cooling modes, limited to keep the components within safe operating ranges. If the heat pump is operating, the cooling minimum airflow is used due to the restriction on the indoor coil. The active minimum airflow will not fall below the outdoor airflow setpoint.

# Space Temperature Control (Single Zone VAV)

Standard (required) with single zone VAV Control.

Supply airflow is adjusted to maintain space temperature. Typically, it operates at minimum airflow until the discharge air setpoint reaches minimum or maximum, indicating that the heating/cooling demand is high, at which point the supply airflow is increased to meet the demand.

With single zone VAV operation, supply fan speed command is adjusted to maintain the supply fan airflow active to the supply fan airflow setpoint active. During normal operation, the supply fan airflow setpoint active is set to the supply fan airflow minimum setpoint active. If the discharge air temperature setpoint active (which adjusts based on space conditions) reaches the discharge air temperature setpoint minimum (cooling) or maximum (heating), the supply fan airflow setpoint active will begin to adjust up by comparing the space temperature active to the space temperature setpoint active. As the airflow setpoint rises above minimum, the discharge setpoint is set to the respective minimum/maximum setpoint.

Supply fan airflow minimum setpoint active is a programdetermined point based on factory settings, mode of operation, outdoor airflow setpoints, or other factors.

### **Economizer Operation**

The following section describes the standard sequence of operation for economizer. Additional options are available for enabling economizer mode, such as dry bulb economizer. Contact the factory for additional information.

#### **Sequence of Operation**

# **Economizer Mode with Supplemental Mechanical Cooling**

#### **Enthalpy (Comparative) Economizer**

Units equipped with modulating outdoor/return air dampers have factory installed outdoor and return air temperature/ humidity sensors for determining economizer mode. Before allowing economizer mode, unit must be in cooling or dehumidification mode. Economizer mode is enabled whenever the outdoor air enthalpy falls below the return air enthalpy (1.5 btu/lb. deadband).

During economizer mode with mechanical cooling, the outdoor air damper position opens to the maximum setpoint, and mechanical cooling is allowed to operate to achieve the discharge air temperature setpoint.

# Economizer without Mechanical Cooling (Free Cooling)

#### **Enthalpy (Comparative) Economizer**

Units equipped with modulating outdoor/return air dampers have factory installed outdoor and return air temperature/ humidity sensors for determining economizer mode. Before allowing economizer mode, unit must be in cooling or dehumidification mode. Economizer mode is enabled whenever the outdoor air enthalpy falls below the return air enthalpy (1.5 btu/lb. deadband).

Free cooling mode (without mechanical cooling) is enabled during economizer mode and when the outdoor air temperature active is 5° below the discharge setpoint active and is not in dehumidification mode. During free cooling, mechanical cooling is locked out, and the outdoor air damper position is modulated to maintain the discharge setpoint active.

#### **Ventilation Mode**

Ventilation mode is used during neutral outdoor air conditions when there is not a need for heating, cooling, or dehumidification. A demand for dehumidification locks out ventilation mode.

#### **Space Control**

Ventilation mode is enabled when the outdoor air temperature is between the high and low ventilation setpoints active (adj.), and the space temperature is within 2° of setpoint. During ventilation mode, all forms of heating, cooling, and energy recovery are disabled.

#### Single Zone VAV

Ventilation mode is enabled when the outdoor air temperature is between the high and low ventilation setpoints active (adj.), and the space temperature is within 2° of setpoint. During ventilation mode, all forms of heating, cooling, and energy recovery are disabled, and the supply fan runs at minimum airflow.

#### **Discharge Air Control**

Ventilation mode is enabled when the outdoor air temperature is between the high and low ventilation setpoints active (adj.). During ventilation mode, all forms of heating, cooling, and energy recovery are disabled.

#### Multi-Zone VAV

Ventilation mode is enabled when the outdoor air temperature is between the high and low ventilation setpoints active (adj.). During ventilation mode, all forms of heating, cooling, and energy recovery are disabled.

#### **Dehumidification Mode**

The following sections describe the standard sequence of operation based on ordered options. Additional options are available for enabling and controlling dehumidification. Contact the factory for additional information. There is a 15-minutes delay in dehumidification if the space dewpoint rises above the dewpoint calculation enable setpoint by 2°. The logic also allows for the dehumidification to immediately function if the bypass deadband criteria is met which is 10° past setpoint, this applies to all dehumidification modes.

# Space Control (Lab/Critical Application) with Outdoor Air Damper

A space dewpoint setpoint is calculated using space temperature setpoint active and space dehumidification setpoint (relative humidity). Dehumidification mode is enabled when the space dewpoint rises above the space dewpoint calculated enable setpoint (2° deadband) or when the outdoor air dewpoint rises above 53° (3° deadband). Dehumidification mode is terminated based on the setpoint deadbands or if the space becomes significantly overcooled.

During dehumidification mode, cooling is controlled to the dehumidification temperature setpoint active, and hot gas reheat (if installed) controls to the discharge air temperature setpoint active.

Dehumidification temperature setpoint active is reset by comparing the space dewpoint to the space dewpoint calculated enable setpoint but is limited to not rise above the discharge air temperature setpoint active. Discharge air temperature setpoint active is reset by comparing the space temperature to the space temperature setpoint active. If the hot gas reheat remains at 100 percent and there is insufficient reheat to meet the discharge temperature setpoint, and primary electric heat is installed, the heater may be energized to provide additional reheat.

# Space Control (Lab/Critical Application) without Outdoor Air Damper

A space dewpoint setpoint is calculated using space temperature setpoint active and space dehumidification setpoint (relative humidity). Dehumidification mode is enabled when the space dewpoint rises above the space dewpoint calculated enable setpoint (2° deadband). Dehumidification



mode is terminated if the space dewpoint falls below the deadband.

During dehumidification mode, cooling is controlled to the dehumidification temperature setpoint active, and hot gas reheat (if installed) controls to the discharge air temperature setpoint active. Dehumidification temperature setpoint active is reset by comparing the space dewpoint to the space dewpoint calculated enable setpoint but is limited to not rise above the discharge air temperature setpoint active. Discharge air temperature setpoint active is reset by comparing the space temperature to the space temperature setpoint active. If the hot gas reheat remains at 100 percent and there is insufficient reheat to meet the discharge temperature setpoint, and primary electric heat is installed, the heater may be energized to provide additional reheat.

# Space Control without Outdoor Air Damper (100 Percent Return Air)

A space dewpoint setpoint is calculated using space temperature setpoint active and space dehumidification setpoint (relative humidity). Dehumidification mode is enabled when the space dewpoint rises above the space dewpoint calculated enable setpoint (2° deadband). Dehumidification mode is terminated based on the setpoint deadband.

During dehumidification mode, cooling is controlled to the dehumidification temperature setpoint active, and hot gas reheat (if installed) controls to the discharge air temperature setpoint active. Dehumidification temperature setpoint active is reset by comparing the space dewpoint to the space dewpoint calculated enable setpoint but is limited to not rise above the discharge air temperature setpoint active. Discharge air temperature setpoint active is reset by comparing the space temperature to the space temperature setpoint active.

If the hot gas reheat remains at 100 percent and there is insufficient reheat to meet the discharge temperature setpoint, the first circuit compressor capacity may be increased to provide additional reheat. If the reheat boost is still not able to meet the discharge air temperature setpoint and the space becomes overcooled for an extended period, dehumidification mode will be terminated to allow the heat to warm the space back to setpoint.

#### Space Control with Outdoor Air Damper

A space dewpoint setpoint is calculated using space temperature setpoint active and space dehumidification setpoint (relative humidity). Dehumidification mode is enabled when the space dewpoint rises above the space dewpoint calculated enable setpoint (2° deadband) or when the outdoor air dewpoint rises above 60° (3° deadband). Dehumidification mode is terminated based on the setpoint deadbands for the space dewpoint or the outdoor air dewpoint.

During dehumidification mode, cooling is controlled to the dehumidification temperature setpoint active, and hot gas reheat (if installed) controls to the discharge air temperature setpoint active. Dehumidification temperature setpoint active is reset by comparing the space dewpoint to the space

dewpoint calculated enable setpoint but is limited to not rise above the discharge air temperature setpoint active. Discharge air temperature setpoint active is reset by comparing the space temperature to the space temperature setpoint active.

If the hot gas reheat remains at 100 percent and there is insufficient reheat to meet the discharge temperature setpoint, the first circuit compressor capacity may be increased to provide additional reheat. If the reheat boost is still not able to meet the discharge air temperature setpoint and the space becomes overcooled for an extended period, dehumidification mode will be terminated to allow the heat to warm the space back to setpoint.

If the space humidity sensor is not installed or is in fault, the space dewpoint is ignored, and the unit reverts to using only outdoor air conditions to determine dehumidification, with a constant dehumidification temperature setpoint of 48°.

#### Single Zone VAV

A space dewpoint setpoint is calculated using space temperature setpoint active and space dehumidification setpoint (relative humidity). Dehumidification mode is enabled when the space dewpoint rises above the space dewpoint calculated enable setpoint or when the outdoor air dewpoint rises above 60° (3° deadband). Dehumidification mode is terminated based on the setpoint deadbands for the space dewpoint or the outdoor air dewpoint.

During dehumidification mode, cooling is controlled to the dehumidification temperature setpoint active, and hot gas reheat (if installed) controls to the discharge air temperature setpoint active. Dehumidification temperature setpoint active is reset by comparing the space dewpoint to the space dewpoint calculated enable setpoint but is limited to not rise above the discharge air temperature setpoint active. The discharge air temperature setpoint active and supply fan speed are reset based on space temperature. See "Supply Fan Operation," p. 117 for a detailed explanation.

If the hot gas reheat remains at 100 percent and there is insufficient reheat to meet the discharge temperature setpoint, the first circuit compressor capacity may be increased to provide additional reheat. If the reheat boost is still not able to meet the discharge air temperature setpoint and the space becomes overcooled for an extended period, dehumidification mode will be terminated to allow the heat to warm the space back to setpoint.

If the space humidity sensor is not installed or is in fault, the space dewpoint is ignored, and the unit reverts to using only outdoor air conditions to determine dehumidification, with a constant dehumidification temperature setpoint of 48°.

# Discharge Control with Outdoor Air Damper

Dehumidification mode is enabled when the outdoor air dewpoint rises above the outdoor air dewpoint setpoint (adj.) and is terminated when the outdoor air dewpoint falls 3° below setpoint. During dehumidification mode, cooling is controlled to the dehumidification temperature setpoint active, and hot



#### Sequence of Operation

gas reheat (if installed) controls to the discharge air temperature setpoint active.

# Discharge Control without Outdoor Air Damper (100 Percent Return Air)

Dehumidification mode is enabled when the return air dewpoint rises above the return air dewpoint setpoint (adj.) and is terminated when the return air dewpoint falls 3° below setpoint. During dehumidification mode, cooling is controlled to the dehumidification temperature setpoint active, and hot gas reheat (if installed) controls to the discharge air temperature setpoint active.

#### Multi-Zone VAV with Outdoor Air Damper

Dehumidification mode is enabled when the outdoor air dewpoint rises above the outdoor air dewpoint setpoint (adj.) and is terminated when the outdoor air dewpoint falls 3° below setpoint. During dehumidification mode, cooling is controlled to the dehumidification temperature setpoint active, and hot gas reheat (if installed) controls to the discharge air temperature setpoint active.

# Multi-Zone VAV without Outdoor Air Damper

Dehumidification mode is enabled when the return air dewpoint rises above the return air dewpoint setpoint (adj.) and is terminated when the return air dewpoint falls 3° below setpoint. During dehumidification mode, cooling is controlled to the dehumidification temperature setpoint active, and hot gas reheat (if installed) controls to the discharge air temperature setpoint active.

### **Heating and Cooling Mode**

Heating and Cooling modes are determined using a series of time-delay latches that vary based on distance from setpoint and a variable deadband. Generally, the mode of operation will be changed from cooling to heating whenever the cooling capacity is at 0 percent and the temperature is below the setpoint minus the deadband, occupied offset. Vice-versa when switching from heating to cooling mode.

#### **Heating Mode**

During heating mode, the entire range of heating capacity is done in stages of each component, with each stage stacking on top of the previous one to achieve the total heating capacity. The stages of heat, in order from first to last, are: ERV, heat pump, primary heat, and finally secondary heat. The heat types installed on a unit can be all, none, or any combination of those. This section describes normal heating operation, but each component has a dedicated operation for specifics on how they are controlled.

During heating mode, each of the various heat capacities are controlled to the discharge air temperature setpoint active. To see a detailed explanation of how each component is controlled, refer to the section that describes each component in detail.

#### **Heat Pumps on Critical Applications**

Whenever switching to heating mode following dehumidification mode, the heat pump will not be allowed to operate for 20-minutes to prevent condensate collected on the indoor coil from instantly evaporating into the air stream. After this period, the primary heater will be disabled to allow the heat pump to operate.

# Energy Recovery Wheel Variable Effectiveness

First, the energy recovery wheel is used as variable effectiveness by modulating exhaust airflow across the ERV using the bypass damper. Once energy recovery is at full capacity (exhaust air bypass fully closed), the next stage of heat is engaged after a delay, and the exhaust air bypass remains fully closed while the next stage of heat is in operation.

#### **Heat Pump**

Heat pump is engaged, and compressor staging begins by modulating the compressor heating capacity to the discharge air temperature setpoint active. If the compressor heating is not sufficient to maintain the discharge air setpoint within 5° for 30-minutes or within 15° for 5-minutes, then the heat pump is disabled and the unit reverts to using the primary heater. Heat pump is also disabled if more than 5 defrost cycles occur per hour. During normal heating operation units with hot water/ steam primary heat will run simultaneously with compressor heating. Gas and electric primary heaters will not operate simultaneously with the heat pump unless configured by KCC as it cannot be field configured. If the discharge air temperature is 10° below discharge air temperature setpoint and compressors are at 100 percent capacity for 30-minutes a cap fail will be triggered. If discharge air temperature is at its max, compressors are at 100 percent capacity, and discharge air temperature is <75°F for 2 hours cap fail will be triggered.

#### **Primary Heat**

The primary heater is engaged, and heating capacity is modulated to the discharge air temperature setpoint active.

#### Secondary Heat (Pre-Heat)

Once all other stages of heat have been applied and operating at 100 percent capacity, the secondary electric heater is used as additional heat capacity.

#### **Cooling Mode**

During cooling mode, cooling capacity controls to discharge air temperature setpoint active. For more information on compressor staging, see section (Additional Features).

### Exhaust Fan Starting Sequence

# Starting Sequence with Isolation (Actuated) Dampers

Isolation dampers are actuator-controlled dampers with end switches. During initial start-up, the isolation damper(s) are energized, and the exhaust fan is started after the end



switch(es) are made on the actuators. On initial start-up, the exhaust fan speed is set to 25 percent signal for the first 30-seconds of operation.

#### Starting Sequence with Gravity or Barometric Dampers

Gravity dampers are either a weighted (barometric) or non-weighted (gravity) damper. The powered exhaust fan starts immediately on a call for exhaust and the dampers are opened using the airflow from the exhaust. On initial start-up, the exhaust fan speed is set to 50 percent signal for the first 30-seconds of operation.

### **Exhaust Fan Operation**

#### **Return Static Pressure Control**

Standard on units equipped with exhaust fan(s) and modulating outdoor/return air dampers with economizer. A differential duct pressure transducer is factory provided and field installed.

After completing the exhaust fan start-up sequence, the exhaust fan controls to the return static pressure setpoint (0.25 in.WC default, adj.). When there is no demand for the exhaust fan, the fan will operate at minimum speed for 5-minutes before disabling the fan. The isolation exhaust dampers (if installed) will be closed after the exhaust fan is disabled. If exhaust fan is static pressure control and static pressure demand is 0 for 5-minutes it will be turned off. When static pressure command is greater than 5 percent it will be tuned back on.

#### **Constant Volume Control**

Standard on units equipped with exhaust fan(s), and with two-position outdoor/return air dampers (not modulating with economizer and with airflow monitoring (piezo) on the exhaust fan).

After completing the exhaust fan start-up sequence, the exhaust fan will control to a constant airflow based on the exhaust airflow setpoint (preset from the factory).

Care must be taken to not increase the exhaust airflow setpoint above the maximum limit of the energy recovery wheel (if installed), which will cause premature failure of the motor and/or bearings.

#### **Constant Speed Control**

Standard on units equipped with exhaust fan(s), and with two-position outdoor/return air dampers (not modulating with economizer, and without exhaust airflow monitoring).

After completing the start-up sequence, the exhaust fan(s) will operate at a constant speed setting, exhaust fan speed setpoint (adj., 80 percent default), which will operate the exhaust fan(s) at that percentage of the maximum Hz setting in the VFD.

### **Energy Recovery Wheel (ERV)**

The energy recovery wheel is used to pre-condition the outdoor air using energy recovered from the exhaust air. All units equipped with an ERV will be provided with modulating bypass dampers on both the outdoor and exhaust air paths. During occupied operation, the ERV is typically on/off, with variable speed via an optional VFD. The ERV operates during occupied operation except during Ventilation or Economizer Mode.

#### **Stop Jog**

During ventilation or economizer mode, there is a stop/jog sequence to prevent stagnant air from causing a musty smell on the ERV. After 4 continuous hours of economizer or ventilation operation, the outdoor air damper is closed to its minimum position, the bypass dampers are closed, and the ERV is enabled for 4-minutes.

#### **Exhaust Air Bypass Damper Control**

As described in the heating mode section, the exhaust air bypass damper is used to modulate heat recovery as the first stage of heating. During heating mode, the exhaust bypass damper is modulated to maintain the discharge air temperature setpoint. The bypass damper is set to fully open whenever the ERV is disabled.

If the exhaust air bypass damper is fully open and the unit is still overheating the discharge air temperature, the ERV will be cycled on/off to maintain the discharge air temperature setpoint active, with extended minimum on/off times to prevent short cycling.

# Outdoor Air Bypass Damper Control (without VFD on ERV)

The outdoor air bypass on the energy recovery wheel is used as frost control for the ERV during low ambient conditions. The damper is modulated open whenever the exhaust leaving temperature (located downstream of the ERV) falls below 15°. The bypass damper is set to fully open whenever the ERV is disabled.

If the unit is equipped with an electric pre-heater, the heater is first used as the frost prevention method before using the outdoor air bypass damper. See pre-heat section for additional information.

If the outdoor air bypass damper is open to 100 percent and the exhaust leaving air temperature is still below 15°. the wheel may perform a start/stop sequence to reduce the capacity further. The wheel has a 10-minute minimum on/off time during this sequence to prevent short-cycling.

# Outdoor Air Bypass Damper (with VFD on ERV)

The outdoor air bypass and VFD on the ERV is used as frost control for the ERV during low ambient conditions. First, the ERV speed is reduced whenever the exhaust leaving temperature (after ERV) falls below 15°. Once the ERV



#### Sequence of Operation

reaches minimum speed and the exhaust temperature is still below 15°, outdoor air bypass damper is modulated open and the ERV remains at minimum speed. The bypass damper is set to fully open whenever the ERV is disabled.

If the unit is equipped with an electric pre-heater, the heater is first used as the frost prevention method before using the wheel speed or the outdoor air bypass damper. See "Electric Pre-Heat," p. 124 for additional information.

### **Unoccupied Mode Operation**

Unoccupied operation is enabled from the factory whenever the unit is ordered as space control or single zone VAV control. In unoccupied operation the unit will use 100 percent return air unless the unit is not equipped with a return air damper. In that case, the outdoor air damper will open to 100 percent.

#### **Unoccupied Cooling Mode**

Unoccupied cooling mode is enabled when the space temperature active is above the unoccupied cooling enable setpoint and remain until space temperature is 2° below setpoint.

#### **Unoccupied Dehumidification Mode**

Unoccupied dehumidification mode is enabled when space humidity active is above the unoccupied humidity enable setpoint and remain until space humidity is 5 percent below setpoint.

#### **Unoccupied Heating Mode**

Unoccupied heating mode is enabled when the space temperature active is below the unoccupied heating enable setpoint and remain until space temperature is 2° above setpoint.

### **Additional Details on Operation**

#### **Evaporator Coil Frost Protection**

All units equipped with compressors will have a suction pressure transducer on at least the first circuit. Since the evaporator coils are generally interlaced for dual circuit units, circuit 1 suction pressure is generally a good indication of both circuits. But, in some cases, the second circuit may also have a suction transducer for expanded frost protection, depending on configuration, such as dual digital scroll.

During compressor operation, the frost control first attempts to limit the modulating capacity (variable or digital scroll, either circuit) before disabling compressors. The expectation is that if there is a demand for cooling below the point at which the unit will freeze, then the unit will actively control to the point just above that point. Generally, this frost point is 95 to 100 psi (29° to 32° saturated) at the compressor but may vary slightly depending on operating conditions and unit configuration.

#### **Compressor Low Ambient Lockout**

Compressor operation will be locked out when the outdoor air temperature is below the compressor cooling low ambient lockout setpoint. (Factory set at 30° Adj.) Unit can remain in cooling mode while compressors are locked out.

#### **Hot Gas Reheat**

Hot gas reheat is fully modulating from 0 to 100 percent, utilizes waste energy absorbed from the evaporator coil on circuit 1, and is used to temper the discharge air temperature during dehumidification or some cases, during cooling mode. Because it uses waste heat that would have been rejected through the condenser, it requires the refrigerant circuit to be operational to provide heat. The hot gas reheat coil is located downstream of the evaporator before the supply fan.

When enabled, the hot gas reheat valve command is adjusted to maintain the discharge air temperature setpoint active and is always enabled during dehumidification mode.

# Hot Gas Reheat Operation with Standard Scroll Compressors

Units equipped with only standard scroll compressors (not digital scroll or variable speed) will enable the hot gas reheat during cooling mode to provide precise temperature control since staged compressors do not have modulating capacity to maintain a temperature. Compressor control is determined by the occupied offset, the arbitration temp/setpoint and the heat/cool mode. The compressors will stage the temperature based off of the evaporator temperature. The amount of offset and deadband is determined by the number of compressor stages to reduce cycling. In summary, the compressors control to a temperature just below the discharge air temperature setpoint active with the hot gas reheat is enabled, controlling to the arbitration temperature setpoint active.

For 1 to 2 compressors, the deadband will be 3°; for 3 to 4 compressors, the deadband will be 5°. The setpoint offset will be half the deadband.

# Hot Gas Reheat Operation with Modulating Capacity Compressors

Units equipped with modulating compressors (digital scroll or variable speed) on the first circuit will enable the hot gas reheat only during dehumidification mode. During dehumidification mode, the compressors control to the dehumidification temperature setpoint active, and the hot gas reheat controls to the discharge air temperature setpoint active.

#### **Hot Gas Reheat Purge Mode**

When utilizing hot gas reheat, the unit must initiate a purge mode to return oil back to the compressor(s). This purge operation has been improved to reduce the impact on the discharge air temperature, while still providing sufficient velocity for oil return. If Digital Scroll is less than 50 percent and compressor 2 is off (25 percent if non tandom, the digital scroll is bumped to 100 percent), this is required because with 1 compressor running unloaded, there is not enough velocity for proper oil return.



Upon entering the purge mode, the last setting is saved so that the unit can return to that position immediately without having to wait for it to adjust down. The valve position is set to 0 percent in the final moments of the purge cycle to quickly cool off the coil to reduce the impact on the supply air conditions.

# Parallel Piped Reheat Circuit (Parallel to Condenser)

After 60 cumulative minutes above 0 percent and below 80 percent, a 2 to 4-minute purge cycle is initiated. During hot gas reheat purge mode, the hot gas reheat valve command is slowly ramped up to 90 percent for 1-minute, and then ramped down to 0 percent for 1-minute.

# Series Piped Reheat Circuit (Series with Condenser)

After 90 cumulative minutes above 0 percent and below 80 percent, a 2 to 4-minute purge cycle is initiated. During hot gas reheat purge mode, the hot gas reheat valve command is slowly ramped up to 100 percent for 1 to 2-minutes, and then ramped down to 0 percent for 1-minute.

### **Heat Pump Operation**

On heat pumps, the reversing valve default (de-energized) state is in the heating position. On initial start-up, if there is a cooling demand, the reversing valve will switch into the cooling position after the compressor status has been proven. If the unit remains in cooling mode, but the first compressor is being cycled, the reversing valve remains energized in the cooling position, even while the compressor is off.

Once there is a heating demand following cooling operation, the compressor typically won't be operating during the switching of modes. To prevent the reversing valve from being stuck, the valve will remain in the cooling position until the compressor status is proven. Units with other forms of heating, such as an energy recovery wheel, may show that the reversing valve is in cooling mode for an extended period during heating mode.

#### **Supplemental Primary Heat**

During heat pump operation, if the compressor heating capacity reaches 100% and there is insufficient heating capacity to meet the discharge air setpoint, units with hot water/steam will provide additional reheat to maintain the discharge temperature setpoint. On units with electric/gas primary heat, the heat pump will be disables and the primary heater will be engaged as the heat source.

### **Air Source Heat Pumps (ASHP)**

#### **Frost Avoidance**

During heating mode, outdoor air dewpoint is measured, and suction pressure is monitored using transducers installed on each refrigeration circuit. Using the measured saturated refrigerant temperature, the compressor capacity is modulated to maintain the saturated temperature slightly above the

outdoor air dewpoint. This allows the circuit to run for an extended period without requiring defrost cycles. The frost avoidance operation is disabled when the saturated temperature rises above freezing.

Frost avoidance is used only on circuits with modulating capacity, such as digital scroll, variable, or even staged compressors, but not on single stage circuits. This operation is restricted if the outdoor air dewpoint is within 5° of the outdoor air temperature (~80 percent RH), as the limitation on the compressor capacity typically causes additional energy consumption.

#### **Demand Defrost Control**

With the frost avoidance method, defrost cycles occur infrequently, and a defrost cycle typically lasts less than 5-minutes.

Without the frost avoidance method, defrost cycles occur only when there is frost accumulation, rather than on a timer. Counterintuitively, frosting on the outdoor coils occur more frequently in mild conditions when the relative humidity is high. This happens because warmer air can hold more moisture than extremely cold air, and thus more water is available to collect on the coil. The frequency of defrost cycles varies between designs and ambient conditions, but generally at full capacity can be expected to occur every 1 to 3 hours if it is 40° and 90 percent RH; or every 6 to 10 hours if it is 40° and 40 percent RH; and 6 to 10 hours if it is 25° and 60 percent, for example. Heat pump operation is disabled if more than five defrost cycles occur per hour.

#### **Demand Defrost Control Sequence**

On the initial start of a circuit during heat pump heating, the circuit is taken to 100 percent capacity for the initial 2-minutes of operation. During that time, the dry coil delta T is measured and used as a reference for future determination of defrost mode

Defrost mode is initiated whenever the dry coil delta T rises by double the original setting and a delay of 2-minutes. Defrost mode is also initiated immediately whenever the suction pressure falls below 35 psi.

During defrost mode, the reversing valves are switched to cooling, outdoor fans are disabled, the compressor staging is locked to prevent compressors from turning off or on, and any modulating compressors are taken to 100 percent command. Defrost mode will continue until either circuit rises above 375 psi liquid pressure. As defrost mode is disabled, the condenser fans are turned on immediately to pull water off the outdoor coil. The reversing valves will remain in cooling for an additional 30 seconds to completely dry the coil. Compressor modulating capacity is released 60 seconds after terminating defrost mode, and compressor staging 120 seconds after terminating defrost mode.

During heat pump operation, If the unit initiates more than 5 defrost cycles in one hour the heat pump will be disabled and the primary heater will be engaged as the heat source.

# Primary Heater Operation During Defrost Mode

During defrost operation the primary heater (Gas, Electric, Hot-water) will be engaged to maintain the discharge air temperature setpoint active. Immediately after the defrost cycle has ended the primary heater will be disabled.

# Outdoor Air Damper Operation in Defrost (Units with Gas, Electric, and Hot Water Heaters)

Durning defrost mode units outdoor air dampers will remain in current position with no change.

# Outdoor Air Damper Operation in Defrost (Units with no Primary Heater)

During defrost mode units with 2-position outdoor/return air dampers will close and use the return air path.

Units with no return air path will remain in the open position supplying unconditioned air.

### **Water Source Heat Pumps**

Outdoor coil water flow status uses a differential pressure switch(es) across the supply and return to prove water flow. Outdoor coil water low temperature switch uses temperature switch(es) on the return (35°F, water; 20°F, glycol). Heat pump operation is disabled if outdoor coil water flow status or outdoor coil water low temperature switch open for more than 20 seconds.

# Split/Dual Exhaust and Return Air Paths

Units equipped with dual air paths for the return and exhaust will have an additional function in addition to the exhaust fan operation.

During all operating conditions, the exhaust fan controls to a pressure differential across the damper between the two air paths to always have air leakage from the return, into the exhaust, so that bathroom exhaust does not leak into the return air stream. During Economizer Mode, the damper between the two paths will open fully, closing the return air damper, and exhausting all of the air through the ERV and out through the exhaust air.

#### **Electric Pre-Heat**

Pre-Heat enable is engaged whenever the exhaust leaving temperature local falls below 20°F, with a deadband of 5°F. The pre-heater is shut off if the pre-heat leaving temperature local rises above 90°F after a 120 seconds delay.

# Refrigerant Detection System (RDS)

A Refrigerant Detection System is installed in the evaporator and controls cabinet sections on units with R-454B refrigerant. Refrigerant Detection Sensors will FAIL OPEN. Sensors will be in a normally CLOSED state while powered ON, and a normally OPEN state while powered OFF. The RDS sequence below may be verified by unplugging the sensor.

The sensors are programmed with a 5-minute delay to extend mitigation for 5 minutes after refrigerant is no longer detected. After this 5-minute delay, if no refrigerant is detected, the contacts will return to their normal closed state. However, if refrigerant is detected at the end of this 5-minute period, the 5-minute sequence will re-initiate.

When R-454B is detected in the Airstream the following sequence will initiate via hardware relays:

- Unit will de-energize all cooling and heating operations and any additional loads other than the supply fan. This includes the ERV and exhaust fan if installed.
- The supply fan will resume operation for dilution of the refrigerant.
- 24VAC status will be provided to the OAUTS board (not to exceed 250MA) that can be used to activate a 24VAC relay coil provided by 3rd party installing contractors on the building side to ensure any required visual or audible alarms (if needed) are energized. This status may also be used to confirm any zoning or fire dampers are commanded to open. Wiring diagrams and example circuitry are provided in "Refrigeration Detection System (RDS)," p. 36 and Figure 121, p. 89.
- Alarms signifying that a refrigerant leak has been detected, will be raised through software to the end user. These software alarms and mitigation status are available via BACnet. See Horizon Integration Guide (OAU-SVP002\*-EN) for more details.

Two-position OA dampers with no return will command the damper to the OPEN position.

Modulating dampers will maintain their current commanded position.

When R-454B is detected in the Controls Cabinet the following sequence will initiate via hardware relays:

- Unit will de-energize all loads. This includes the supply fan, exhaust fan, and ERV.
- Controls Cabinet Ventilation Fans installed in the controls cabinet section of the unit will engage to evacuate refrigerant from the controls cabinet.
- 24VAC status will be provided to the OAUTS board (not to exceed 250MA) that can be used to activate a 24VAC relay coil provided by 3rd party installing contractors on the building side to ensure any required visual or audible alarms (if needed) are energized. This status may also be used to confirm any zoning or fire dampers are commanded to open. Wiring diagrams and example circuitry are provided in

# "Refrigeration Detection System (RDS)," p. 36 and Figure 121, p. 89.

 Alarms signifying that a refrigerant leak has been detected, will be raised through software to the end user. These software alarms and mitigation status are available via BACnet. See Horizon Integration Guide (OAU-SVP002\*-EN) for more details.

**Note:** Controls cabinet ventilation fans will also operate if the cabinet temperature exceeds 100°F



Before starting up the unit, please scan the QR code sticker on the side of the unit by the ETL label, to complete the digital start-up form. Once completed, the start-up form will automatically be submitted. If you cannot access the QR code, please use this link to access the form - https://horizonstartup.kccmfg.com.

| Job Name                        |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Unit Serial Number              |     |
| Unit Tag                        |     |
| Technician Name                 |     |
| Trane Office                    |     |
| Horizon Tech Training Completed | Yes |
| Start-up Date                   |     |

The factory can be reached with questions or concerns at (502) 493-5757, or techsupport1@kccmfg.com.

### **Pre-Start-Up Checklist**

| Check for visible shipping damage                         |
|---|
| All fans spin freely                                      |
| Interior cabinet inspected for damage or loose components |
| Clearances meet minimum requirements in IOM               |
| All electrical components are tight                       |
| Gas piping is complete and landed at unit (if applicable) |
| Condensate drains and P-Traps installed                   |
| All doors open freely                                     |
| All field installed devices are installed                 |

### Voltages

| Rated Voltage          | Measured | Recommended     |
|------------------------|----------|-----------------|
| Voltage L1-L2          |          | Voltage +/- 10% |
| Voltage L1-L3          |          | Voltage +/- 10% |
| Voltage L2-L3          |          | Voltage +/- 10% |
| Voltage L1-G           |          | -               |
| Voltage L2-G           |          | -               |
| Voltage L3-G           |          | -               |
| TNS2 Secondary Voltage |          | 22 to 28Vac     |

#### **Actuators**

Verify each actuator moves through its entire range of operation.

| Actuator Name                          | Control                   | Operation Verified |
|--|---------------------------|--------------------|
| Outdoor Air Damper Actuator            | 2-Position or 2 to 10 Vdc |                    |
| Return Air Damper Actuator             | 2-Position or 2 to 10 Vdc |                    |
| Exhaust Damper Actuator(s)             | 2-Position                |                    |
| Split Exhaust/Return Damper Actuator   | 2-Position                |                    |
| Outdoor Air ERV Bypass Damper Actuator | 2 to 10 Vdc               |                    |

| Actuator Name   | Control     | Operation Verified |
|---|-------------|--------------------|
| Exhaust Air ERV Bypass Damper Actuator                  | 2 to 10 Vdc |                    |
| WSHP Water Valve Actuator(s)                            | 2 to 10 Vdc |                    |
| Chilled Water/Hot Water Valve Actuator (Field Supplied) | -           |                    |

#### **Motor Data**

| Motor           | Rated FLA | Running FLA |    |    |
|-----------------|-----------|-------------|----|----|
|                 | Rateu FLA | L1          | L2 | L3 |
| Supply Fan 1    |           |             |    |    |
| Supply Fan 2    |           |             |    |    |
| Exhaust Fan 1   |           |             |    |    |
| Exhaust Fan 2   |           |             |    |    |
| Condenser Fan 1 |           |             |    |    |
| Condenser Fan 2 |           |             |    |    |
| Condenser Fan 3 |           |             |    |    |
| Condenser Fan 4 |           |             |    |    |
| Condenser Fan 5 |           |             |    |    |
| Condenser Fan 6 |           |             |    |    |
| Energy Wheel    |           |             |    |    |

#### **Compressor Data**

|              | Poted Amno |    | Running Amps |    |
|--------------|------------|----|--------------|----|
|              | Rated Amps | L1 | L2           | L3 |
| Compressor 1 |            |    |              |    |
| Compressor 2 |            |    |              |    |
| Compressor 3 |            |    |              |    |
| Compressor 4 |            |    |              |    |
| Compressor 5 |            |    |              |    |
| Compressor 6 |            |    |              |    |

### **Refrigeration Start-Up**

#### Important:

Cooling start-up can only be completed if the outdoor air temperature is above 50°F. If outdoor air temperature is below 50°F, cooling start-up can be performed with 100 percent return air to confirm operation if return air conditions are above 50°F. Otherwise, a bump test is recommended to verify compressor operation. Please note in the comments if only a bump test is performed.

**Note:** Contact Tech Support (502-493-5757) if superheat above 30°.

- Tandem or trio circuits must have all compressors on, and digital scroll/variable speed commands set to 100 percent.
- 2. Purge the hot gas reheat coil (if installed) by setting the hot gas reheat command to 100 percent for one minute, and then immediately to 0 percent.

**Note:** OADG Models set to 80 percent rather than 100 percent.

- Allow the head pressure control to modulate the condenser fans freely.
- 4. Take measurements under Cooling once the system has settled.
- Heat Pumps: Switch reversing valve to heating, repeat steps 1 to 4 for heating mode. Take measurements under the Heating section.
- 6. Repeat for Circuit 2 (if applicable).
- ☐ Check if test data below is with both circuits in operation.
- ☐ Check if cooling start-up performed using 100 percent return air.



|              |                                  | Circuit 1 |         | Circ    | uit 2   |
|--------------|----------------------------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|
|              |                                  | Cooling   | Heating | Cooling | Heating |
|              | Outdoor Temp <sup>(a)</sup> (°F) |           |         |         |         |
|              | Outdoor RH <sup>(a)</sup> (%)    |           |         |         |         |
|              | Pressure (PSI)                   |           |         |         |         |
| Suction Line | Sat. Temp (°F)                   |           |         |         |         |
| Suction Line | Temp (°F)                        |           |         |         |         |
|              | Superheat (°F) <sup>(b)</sup>    |           |         |         |         |
|              | Pressure (PSI)                   |           |         |         |         |
| Liquid Lino  | Sat. Temp (°F)                   |           |         |         |         |
| Liquid Line  | Temp (°F)                        |           |         |         |         |
|              | Subcooling (°F)                  |           |         |         |         |
|              | Entering Water Temp (°F)         |           |         |         |         |
| WSHP Only    | Leaving Water Temp (°F)          |           |         |         |         |
|              | Water Coil Pressure Drop (PSI)   |           |         |         |         |

<sup>(</sup>a) Replace with return air temperatures if doing 100 percent recirc testing during the winter

<u>Expectations</u>: The subcooling varies depending on conditions and mode of operation. For example, during dehumidification mode, the head pressure setting is higher to improve reheat capacity and will generally have higher subcooling during testing because the hot gas reheat is manually being closed.

### **Indirect Fired Gas Heat Start-Up**

**Note:** High limit trips may occur after extended operation during high ambient temperatures. Cooling can be

operated simultaneously for a short time to allow startup.

#### **Gas Pressure Settings (Modulating)**

|                               | Measured Pressure | Natural Gas Settings | Propane Settings |                     |
|-------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Incoming to Unit              |                   | 7 to 14              | 12 to 13         | in.H <sub>2</sub> O |
| Between On/Off and Mod. Valve |                   | 5                    | 12               | in.H <sub>2</sub> O |
| Stage 1 Modulating (low fire) |                   | 0.4                  | 0.6 to 2**       | in.H <sub>2</sub> O |
| Stage 1 Manifold (high fire)  |                   | 3.5                  | 10.5             | in.H <sub>2</sub> O |
| Stage 2 Manifold              |                   | 3.5                  | 10.5             | in.H <sub>2</sub> O |
| Stage 3 Manifold              |                   | 3.5                  | 10.5             | in.H <sub>2</sub> O |

<sup>\*</sup>Gas quality varies from site to site. Set the minimum fire gas pressures to the lowest possible pressure so that a consistent, quality flame is present. Verify the flame remains of high quality by modulating the signal up and down after releasing control back to the program.

### Gas Pressure Settings (Two Stage)

|                              | Measured Pressure | Natural Gas Settings | Propane Settings |                     |
|------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Incoming to Unit             |                   | 7 to 14              | 11 to 14         | in.H <sub>2</sub> O |
| Stage 1 Manifold (Low Fire)  |                   | 1.1                  | 2.5              | in.H <sub>2</sub> O |
| Stage 1 Manifold (High Fire) |                   | 3.5                  | 8                | in.H <sub>2</sub> O |

### **Electric Heat Start-Up**

#### **Heater Data**

|                         | Rated Amps | Running Amps |  |  |
|-------------------------|------------|--------------|--|--|
| Electric Primary Heater |            |              |  |  |

<sup>(</sup>b) Contact tech support if >30°.

|                     | Rated Amps | Running Amps |  |  |
|---------------------|------------|--------------|--|--|
| Electric Pre-Heater |            |              |  |  |

### **Programming**

#### **Generate Point Summary Report**

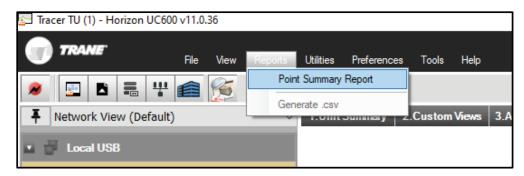
Generate a point summary report via Tracer<sup>®</sup> TU and include it along with the start-up report. This point summary report includes any configuration settings made between shipping and start-up.

**Note:** Setpoints are pre-set at the factory using submittal data but may require field adjustments to achieve desirable operation.

Generate this report by going to Reports -> Point Summary Report. None of the checkboxes need to be selected for the pop-up window.

If changes are made to the program, please email backup program to <a href="mailto:horizonstartup@kccmfg.com">horizonstartup@kccmfg.com</a>.

☐ Check if Program Control Type changed at start-up



### **Final Notes**

Check all that apply:

- ☐ Quality Issues found at start-up
- ☐ Failed Part(s) at start-up
- ☐ Refrigerant Leak
- ☐ Electrical components mis-wired from factory
- ☐ Charge Adjustments needed at start-up

- ☐ Site Issues at start-up
- ☐ Incoming power issues
- ☐ Electrical phasing issues
- ☐ Ductwork not completed
- ☐ Incoming gas pressure issues

If you check any of the above: Please describe below.

Submit completed form to <a href="https://horizonstartup@kccmfg.com">horizonstartup@kccmfg.com</a>.

If changes are made to the factory program, or program type changed, please email backup of program.



## **Limited Warranty**

# 1-Year Manufacturer Parts Warranty

#### **Horizon Models**

This warranty is extended to the original purchaser and to any succeeding owner of the real property to which the Horizon unit is originally affixed and applies to products purchased and retained for use within the U.S.A. and Canada. The Company warrants for a period of 12 months from initial start-up or 18 months from date of shipment, whichever is less, that the company products covered by this order (1) are free from defects in material and workmanship and (2) have the capacities and ratings set forth in the Companys catalogs and bulletins.

Warrantors obligations and liabilities under this warranty are limited to furnishing F.O.B. warrantor factory or warehouse at warrantor designated shipping point, freight allowed to buyers city, replacement parts for warrantors products covered under this warranty. Warrantor shall not be obligated to pay for the cost of lost refrigerant. No liability shall attach to warrantor until products have been paid for and then liability shall be limited solely to the purchase price of the equipment under warranty shown to be defective.

This warranty shall not apply to any equipment which has been repaired or altered in such manner as, in the judgment of the Company, affects its stability or reliability. Nor does it cover corrosion, erosion, deterioration or damage due to accident, abuse, external causes, or freezing. This warranty is conditioned upon the equipment operating under normal use and service. A written notice of material considered defective under this warranty shall be given to the Company. No liability whatever shall attach to the Company until said products have been paid for and then said liability shall be limited to the purchase price of the equipment shown to be defective.

THE WARRANTY AND LIABILITY SET FORTH HEREIN ARE IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES AND LIABILITIES, WHETHER IN CONTRACT OR IN NEGLIGENCE, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, IN LAW OR IN FACT, INCLUDING IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR PARTICULAR USE, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL WARRANTOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES.

In no event shall KCC International Inc. be liable for any incidental or consequential damages. This exclusion applies regardless of whether such damages are sought based on breach of warranty, breach of contract, negligence, strict liability in tort, or any other legal theory. Should KCC International Inc. nevertheless be found liable for any damages, they shall be limited to the purchase price of the equipment.

\* This warranty is for commercial usage of said equipment and not applicable when the equipment is used for a residential application. Commercial use is any application where the end purchaser uses the product for other than personal, family or household purposes.



Trane - by Trane Technologies (NYSE: TT), a global climate innovator - creates comfortable, energy efficient indoor environments for commercial and residential applications. For more information, please visit trane.com or tranetechnologies.com. Trane has a policy of continuous product and product data improvement and reserves the right to change design and specifications without notice. We are committed to using environmentally conscious print practices.